



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



FOLD BY
HIPPLE & LAWRENCE,
Salem.

Edw T
1518.29.220

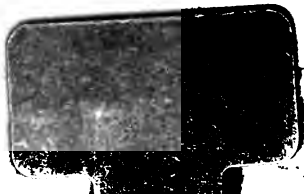
**HARVARD COLLEGE
LIBRARY**



**THE ESSEX INSTITUTE
TEXT-BOOK COLLECTION**

**GIFT OF
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON
OF NEW YORK**

JANUARY 25, 1924



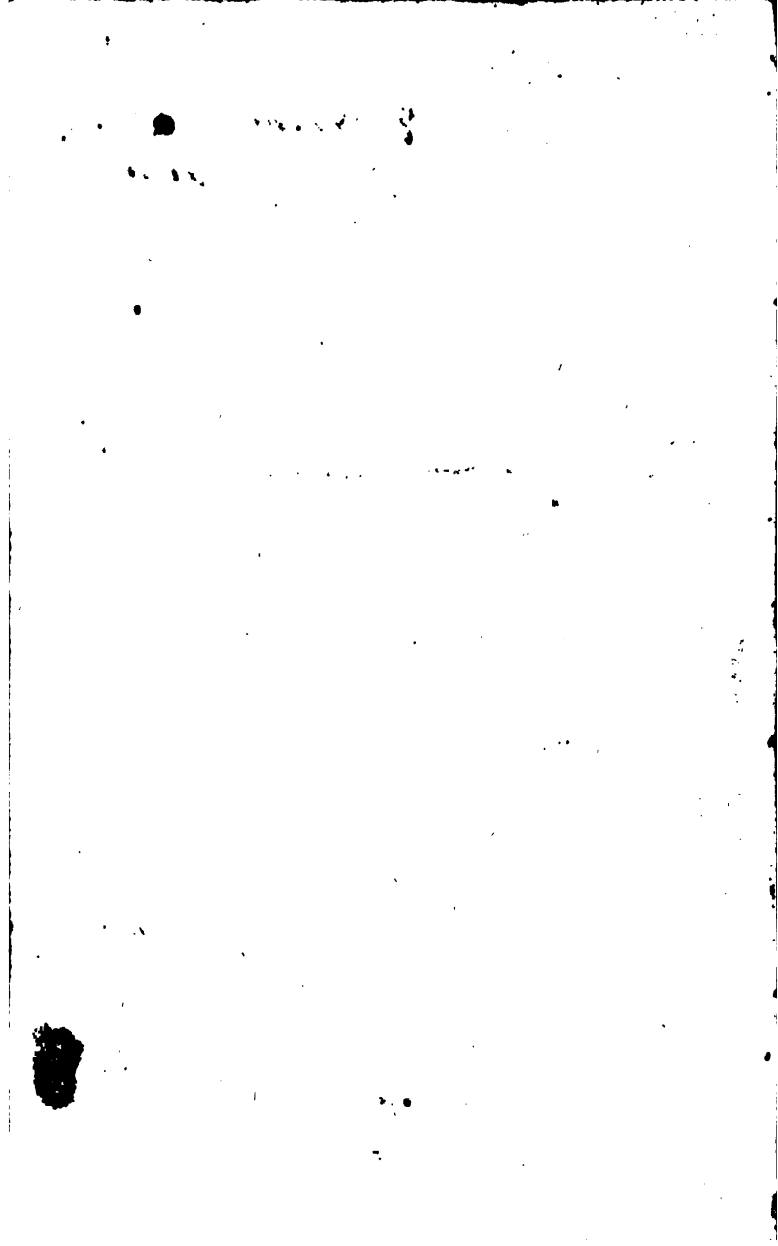


3 2044 102 850 898



H. Grant

1860



A
NEW AND COMPLETE
GRAMMAR,
OF THE
FRENCH TONGUE;

IN WHICH
THE AUTHOR HAS ATTEMPTED TO REDUCE THE
CONSTRUCTION OF THE LANGUAGE
TO ITS

SIMPLEST PRINCIPLES,

AND TO ESTABLISH

New and Plain Rules

*To Facilitate the American or English pupil in
becoming acquainted with*

ITS PECULIARITIES.

IT ALSO CONTAINS

NEW AND EASY RULES

ON PRONUNCIATION; ON THE GENDER OF THE NOUNS; ON
THE NATURE AND GOVERNMENT OF THE ARTICLES,
PRONOUNS, VERBS, PARTICIPLES, &c

A NEW METHOD

OF LEARNING THE IRREGULAR VERBS WITH
GREATER FACILITY;

*An Accurate List of those Expressions in which Foreigners
are generally found deficient;*

AND THE

SOLUTION OF MANY DIFFICULTIES

HITHERTO UNEXPLAINED.

BY JOS. F. A. BŒUF,
Teacher of the French Language.

New-York:

SOLD BY THE PUBLISHER, NO. 29, MURRAY-STREET, AND
BY THE PRINCIPAL BOOKSELLERS.

1829.

Edue T 1574.29.220

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON
JANUARY 25, 1924

SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW-YORK, ss.

BE IT REMEMBERED, That on the 5th day of November, A. D. 1829, in the 54th year of the Independence of the United States of America, J. F. A. Bœuv, of the said District, hath deposited in this office, the title of a Book, the right whereof he claims as author in the words following, to wit :

" A new and complete Grammar of the French Tongue ; in which the author has attempted to reduce the construction of the language to its simplest principles, and to establish new and plainer rules to facilitate the American or English pupil in becoming acquainted with its peculiarities. It also contains new and easy rules on pronunciation ; on the gender of the nouns ; on the nature and government of the articles, pronouns, verbs, participles, &c. A new method of learning the irregular verbs with greater facility ; an accurate list of those expressions in which foreigners are generally found deficient ; and the solution of many difficulties, hitherto unexplained. By Joseph F. A. Bœuv, Teacher of the French Language."

In conformity to the Act of Congress of the United States, entitled " An Act for the encouragement of Learning, by securing the copies of Maps, Charts, and Books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies during the time therein mentioned." And also to an Act, entitled " An Act, supplementary to an Act, entitled an Act for the encouragement of Learning, by securing the copies of Maps, Charts, and Books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies, during the time therein mentioned, and extending the benefits thereof to the arts of designing, engraving, and etching historical and other prints."

FRED. J. BETTS,

Clerk of the Southern District of New-York.

PREFACE.

—●●—

In offering to the public, under the title of a Grammar, the plan which I have successfully adopted in teaching the French language, I cannot avoid feeling some apprehensions as to its final result. Had I merely considered the merits of Levizac and Wanostrocht, the two authors, who seem, at present, to divide the general approbation, I never should have suffered my book to appear before the public.

Without wishing to detract from the general reputation of those grammarians, it is not too much to say, that their respective works contain defects which materially retard the progress of the English learner. In view of these defects, I have commenced this somewhat hazardous undertaking, in which I have been encouraged and patronized by individuals whose merit is generally acknowledged. Still, I have reason to fear, that many, under the influence of interest or prejudice, will take up my work, with a previous determination to expose its most trivial faults; and I must, therefore, more fully explain my motives, and give my opinion on the delicate but important subject of teaching.

A principle which seems to be universally adopted, is, that when men have lost that sort of instinct which is given by nature as the guide of their conduct before the dawnings of reason, their future knowledge must be gained by comparing what they already know, with what they intend to acquire. Thus a child guesses at the meaning of the sounds that he hears, and even a man cannot discover the meaning of the words of a foreign language, but by comparing them with those which he already understands.

In the application of the above-mentioned principle, we notice, that persons, even of mature minds, when attempting to learn a foreign language, can at first merely translate the words of their native tongue into those of the language they are learning. To teach the French language, then, to an English or American pupil, is to enable him, with ease, to translate the English into French. To facilitate this translation, several plans have been adopted, in many of which, a thing most essential to be observed, appears to have been wholly neglected.

Every language is governed by rules, which, when joined together, form the grammar of that language. A person who speaks correctly observes the rules of grammar, and is supposed to be acquainted with it; while ignorance of grammar must certainly lead to incorrect speaking.

It is indeed desirable that a scholar should be able to express his thoughts accurately, without undergoing the labor and vexation of learning rules, but in every country, experience has shewn, that the best method of teaching a language, even to a native, has been to explain the rules of grammar; and it is true of grammatical, as well as of civil laws, that they cannot be observed unless they are known.

It may be the fact, that, owing to the simplicity of the English syntax, a person can attain to a high degree of perfection in English, without being a finished scholar; but in French, it is absolutely impossible, even to the natives, to speak or write a sentence correctly, without knowing the syntax of the language, and of course being acquainted with the grammar.

We are now prepared to say, that a grammar, the object of which is to teach a foreign language, should be simple and intelligible, and should facilitate the comparison between the language known, and the one to be learned. In addition to this, every nice peculiarity, every little difference between the two languages, should be carefully noticed and explained.

To prove that *Levizac* and *Wanostrocht*, which are most commonly adopted in teaching the French to the English, do not fulfil these necessary conditions, requires more boldness than eloquence or argument: and in endeavoring to show it, I shall present the opinions of others, as well as my own.

Owing either to the prejudice of teachers, or the influence of habit, where one of these grammars is adopted, the other is entirely disused, so that whichever of these books I might criticise, I should always be upheld by half of the teachers.

It must not be thought, however, that the teachers who are so partial to one of these grammars, follow it without reserve. *Levizac* has already undergone several alterations and amplifications called improvements, and *Wanostrocht's*, is now no longer the primitive work of that author.

Besides, many of the most celebrated French teachers, in the use of the book which they select, adopt a peculiar method by which they endeavor to supply many deficiencies, and they pass over many parts which are useless.

My own opinion has long since been formed, respecting these works, and I never have used them with learners, when I could avoid it.

Let a pupil take Levizac's grammar, and attempt to write the exercises which it contains. He will, for a considerable time, be obliged to copy French sentences, which he does not understand; for the author has not given to the beginner French exercises, adapted to his knowledge, and as the scholar is at first unable to translate more than one word in ten, the French is placed under the English. In addition to this, numbers and signs are spread throughout the book, in order to facilitate the learner's endeavors to write the little which remains.

In many instances, these signs and numbers are intended to supply the numerous explanations which are wanting. If, then, the scholar happens to make an error, the teacher can only say that he has not entirely observed the signs or numbers.

From this fact we may see that very little mental effort can be required on the part of the pupil, and that his dependance on the signs is by no means calculated to produce habits of independent and vigorous thought.

The apologists of Levizac may perhaps refer me to the second and third parts of his grammar; these, however, are merely the correct translations into English of a French grammar, such as is used by the natives, who must of course understand the French phrases and gallicisms.

I allow that some rules are given, but they are few and imperfect, and the English pupil has no guide to enable him to select the best of two doubtful expressions. But to review every page of this work, and to notice all its deficiencies, would extend this preface too far, and I pass on to some brief remarks on Wanostrocht. This grammarian may appear, at first sight, to throw much light on some subjects, but the order of his work is not calculated to perfect a scholar, and the principal defects of the former grammar are still more obvious in him. The author did not seem aware of the fact, that the mind of the learner, as well as the book, is to be made perfect.

But after noticing these prominent defects of others, how can I fulfil the expectations of those who desire to see the inconveniences obviated, or how can I hope for success in attempting to rival such popular authors? my advantages for doing it, have been comparatively few.

Having been in this country but a very short time, and of course, not being sufficiently acquainted with the English language, to write a grammar, without assistance, I necessarily had recourse to others to revise my style and arrangement.

But I had not foreseen how difficult it was, after having con-

ceived a thought, to have it faithfully expressed by another person, nor had I calculated the numerous difficulties of publication. Frequently in correcting proof sheets, I have been obliged to restore my phrases to their original meaning, and to alter the pure style of a native, for the sake of explaining my thoughts with fulness and accuracy.

But in spite of all my care, many faults have been committed, and comparatively few corrected. Most of these errors, it is believed, are in the English Syntax of this work, and therefore will not naturally affect the learner's progress in French.

They originated in my imperfect knowledge of the English language, and can be easily corrected in a future edition. That these faults are not more numerous, is owing, in part, to the assistance of others, and I cannot here omit to offer my grateful acknowledgments to those friends, who willingly assumed part of my labor, and to whose advice and assistance the work owes much of its present correctness.

As I know, however, that no one is allowed to request indulgence for a book which is printed, I will but apologise, for the above mentioned faults, and say, with Wanostrocht,

"Throughout the whole composition, the Author's chief aim has been to unite ease and simplicity, with accuracy and precision. That he has sometimes said too little where more was required, and sometimes too much, where less would have been sufficient, he does not take upon himself to assert. That he has sometimes failed through negligence, and many times through ignorance, he has also great reason to fear. His daily avocations left him but little time for study, and his want of a better acquaintance with the English language may have subjected him to many inaccuracies in his style, and sometimes, to palpable improprieties."

Whatever may be the success of my grammar, I hope and confidently believe that no one will reproach me with concealing, rather than attempting to remove the difficulties of the learner; and that no one will deny me the credit of having formed a great number of simple rules which will assist the pupil's progress in the most difficult parts of our language.

I should be but little disappointed, if my work, at first, should not be adopted by many other teachers. They are not habituated to it, as to other grammars, and will perhaps find that I pass too rapidly from one difficulty to another. To this objection, I may reply, no one can hope to make a good scholar, (with any book whatever), without personal effort; and I believe, from my own experience, that my grammar will require fewer of these efforts than any now in use.

It is not a work that I *purpose* to try, but one which I *have* tried, for two years.

When I first taught French in this country, I was surprised to notice how little was known by pupils compared to the time spent in study. Reflection upon the grammars in use, which were made for natives of France, not for foreigners, and observations of their defective explanations made the reasons of their slow progress evident.

I have, since then, conceived the plan of an elementary work, which I now present to the public. The habitual faults of former scholars were upon those points for which no rules were given. I gave the rules which now compose my work, and I can say, that I have succeeded in making good scholars.

As I am sure the same difficulties must have been met with by other teachers, perhaps these sheets may be of some assistance to them. Should they find the exercises too short, I shall, at some future time, give them a new set of exercises, which want of time prevented me from joining to this volume, and which, if necessary, they may at present supply for themselves.

Such exercises will be a good substitute for those ridiculous dialogues which are frequently given to learners, and which seem better fitted for parrots than intelligent beings.

If the pupils be intelligent and very anxious to learn, I give them compositions to write on subjects chosen from the third part, adapted to their want and capacity.

In conclusion, I will add, that with this grammar, my pupils, of all ages, correct their own exercises without any assistance, when the faults are merely pointed out. Thus I could always be sure that the rules were perfectly understood.

Whatever be the fate of my book, I can still use it myself with the utmost confidence, and I trust, I shall still be able to answer all objections by a reference to my former and present scholars, whose proficiency will be the best test of its merits.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

| | |
|---|----------------|
| Of the Alphabet, | 1 |
| Of the Vowels, | 1 |
| Of the Consonants, | 2 |
| Of the Diphthongs, | 4 |
| Of the compound Vowels, | 4 |
| Observations in Reading, | 6 |
| On Euphony, | 7 |
| OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH, | 9 |
| CHAPTER I. Of the Noun or Substantive, | 9 |
| Of the Gender and Number, | 10 |
| Lists showing the gender and number of Substantives, according to their terminations, | 11, 12, 13, 14 |
| CHAPTER II. Of the Articles, | 18 |
| Of the French Articles and Prepositions <i>de</i> and <i>d'</i> , | 18 |
| Of the formation of the plural of the French Substantives, | 22 |
| Of the Partitive Article, | 24 |
| CHAPTER III. Of the Adjectives, | 25 |
| Formation of their feminine and plural, and place of the Adjectives, | 25 |
| Exception to the formation of the feminine of Adjectives, | 26 |
| Exception to the formation of the plural, | 29 |
| Of the Possessive Adjectives, | 31 |
| Of the Demonstrative Adjectives, | 32 |
| Of the Cardinal Numbers, | 33 |
| Of the Ordinal Numbers, | 36 |
| Introductory remarks to the pronouns and verbs, | 37 |
| CHAPTER IV. Of the pronouns, | 39 |
| Personal Pronouns, | 39 |
| Personal Pronouns nominatives or objectives to the verbs, .. | 40 |
| A list of the Personal Pronouns when objective to the verbs, .. | 41 |
| CHAPTER V. Of the Verbs, | 42 |
| Verb <i>Avoir</i> , to have, | 42 |
| The verb <i>Avoir</i> , negatively, | 46 |
| interrogatively, | 47 |
| interrogatively and negatively, | 48 |
| Of the verb <i>Etre</i> , to be, | 48 |
| The verb <i>Etre</i> , negatively, | 50 |
| interrogatively, | 51 |
| interrogatively and negatively, | 51 |
| Of the Conjugations, | 51 |

| | |
|--|----|
| First Conjugation in <i>er</i> , (<i>parler</i> , to speak.) | 52 |
| Observations in conjugating verbs like <i>parler</i> , | 56 |
| Negative and interrogative verbs, | 58 |
| Verb <i>Aller</i> , to go, negatively, | 59 |
| Observations on Interrogative Verbs, | 63 |
| Verb <i>Envoyer</i> , to send, interrogatively, | 64 |
| Formation of the tenses of the verbs, | 67 |
| Second conjugation in <i>ir</i> , | 68 |
| Third conjugation in <i>oir</i> , | 70 |
| Fourth conjugation in <i>re</i> , | 71 |
| Of the different kinds of verbs—active and neuter, | 72 |
| A list of the neuter verbs, which take the auxiliary <i>être</i> , | 73 |
| Of Passive Verbs, | 73 |
| Of pronominal verbs, | 74 |
| Conjugation of a pronominal verb, | 75 |
| Pronominal verbs in the interrogative and negative, | 77 |
| Of the impersonal verbs, | 78 |
| Of the irregular verbs, | 79 |
| Irregular verbs of the second conjugation, | 80 |
| Irregular verbs of the third conjugation, | 83 |
| Irregular verbs of the fourth conjugation, | 85 |
| CHAPTER VI. Of the Participles, Prepositions, Adverbs, Conjunctions, and Interjections, | 90 |

PART II.

| | |
|---|-----|
| CHAPTER I. Of the Substantives, | 94 |
| Of Compound Nouns, | 94 |
| Of the formation of the plural of the French compound nouns, | 95 |
| CHAPTER II. Of the articles, | 96 |
| General principle, | 97 |
| General rule, | 98 |
| Observations, | 98 |
| Application of the general rule on the articles, | 108 |
| Rules on the Partitive Article, | 111 |
| General rule on the use of the partitive article, | 113 |
| Application of the above rule, | 114 |
| On some English compound nouns, | 117 |
| CHAPTER III. Of the Adjectives, | 120 |
| Of the degrees of signification of the Adjectives, | 123 |
| Comparatives, | 124 |
| Superlatives, | 125 |
| Difference of construction between the French and English languages, | 126 |
| Regimen of Adjectives, | 127 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Adjectives of Number,..... | 129 |
| CHAPTER IV. Of the Pronouns,..... | 132 |
| Personal Pronouns, | 132 |
| Of Personal Pronouns after Prepositions,..... | 133 |
| Of the personal pronouns, nominative to the verb, | 133 |
| Of the English pronoun <i>It</i> ,..... | 135 |
| Of the pronouns <i>en</i> and <i>y</i> ,..... | 136 |
| Of the French pronoun <i>on</i> , | 136 |
| Of the reflective pronouns, <i>se</i> and <i>soi</i> , | 138 |
| Of the personal pronouns objective to the verb. | 139 |
| Cases where the personal pronouns of the third person may apply to things, | 143 |
| Cases in which the personal pronouns may be used instead of the possessive adjectives, | 144 |
| Cases where the pronouns <i>en</i> and <i>y</i> may apply to persons, .. | 145 |
| Of the French pronoun <i>le</i> , | 145 |
| Of the French pronoun <i>en</i> in its different significations,..... | 147 |
| Of the pronoun <i>en</i> , supplying the possessive adjectives,..... | 148 |
| Of the English pronoun <i>one</i> ,..... | 149 |
| Of the English pronoun <i>it</i> , | 150 |
| Of possessive pronouns,..... | 151 |
| Of the relative pronouns, | 153 |
| Of absolute and interrogative pronouns, | 155 |
| Of the English interrogative pronoun <i>whose</i> ,..... | 158 |
| Of the demonstrative pronouns, | 158 |
| Of indefinite pronouns—1st class, | 161 |
| 2d do. | 163 |
| 3d do. | 165 |
| 4th do. | 168 |
| CHAPTER V. Of the verbs,..... | 170 |
| Agreement of the verb with its nominative, | 170 |
| Of collective nouns or nouns of multitude, | 171 |
| Of the place of the nominative, | 173 |
| Of the place of the objective, | 175 |
| Of the use of the tenses of the French verbs, | 176 |
| Of the infinitive mood, | 176 |
| Indicative mood, present tense,..... | 179 |
| Of the imperfect and preterite definite and indefinite,..... | 180 |
| Recapitulation of the above explanations,..... | 182 |
| Of the pluperfect and preterit anterior, | 186 |
| Of the future tense, | 188 |
| Of the conditional mood, | 188 |
| Of the imperative mood, | 189 |
| Of the subjunctive mood, | 190 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Of the use of the tenses of the subjunctive mood, | 193 |
| General examples on the subjunctive, | 194 |
| Examples on the subjunctive after conjunctions,..... | 195 |
| CHAPTER VI. Of the participle,..... | 197 |
| Of the present participle, | 198 |
| Of the past participle,..... | 199 |
| Cases in which the agreement of the past participle might present some difficulty, | 201 |
| CHAPTER VII. Of the prepositions, | 204 |
| Remarks on prepositions, | 205 |
| Of the article after prepositions, | 206 |
| Observations on some English prepositions,..... | 209 |
| Of the preposition <i>de</i> , <i>d</i> and <i>pour</i> , | 210 |
| Of the preposition <i>de</i> , when required in French, although not used in English,..... | 213 |
| CHAPTER VIII. Of the adverbs, | 214 |
| Of the negatives <i>ne</i> , <i>pas</i> , and <i>point</i> , | 216 |
| CHAPTER IX. Of the conjunctions, | 218 |

PART III.

OF THE GALLICISMS AND ANGLICISMS.

| | |
|---|-----|
| Of the verbs <i>avoir</i> and <i>être</i> , | 219 |
| Different expressions constructed with <i>avoir</i> , | 219 |
| On <i>voici</i> and <i>voilà</i> , | 221 |
| The verb <i>y avoir</i> in its different attributions, | 221 |
| Different expressions constructed with <i>être</i> , | 223 |
| Of the verb <i>être</i> used impersonally, | 224 |
| Of the possessive case after <i>to be</i> , | 225 |
| Of the English auxiliary verbs, | 225 |
| Of the French verb <i>vouloir</i> and the auxiliaries <i>will</i> and <i>would</i> , | 226 |
| Of the French verb <i>devoir</i> , and the auxiliary <i>shall</i> , <i>should</i> , and <i>ought to</i> , | 227 |
| Of the verb <i>pouvoir</i> , and the auxiliary verbs <i>can</i> and <i>could</i> , <i>may</i> and <i>might</i> , | 228 |
| Of the French verb <i>laisser</i> , and the auxiliary <i>let</i> , | 228 |
| Of the French verb <i>faire</i> , and the auxiliary <i>do</i> and <i>did</i> , | 229 |
| Of the Past Participles, <i>laissé</i> and <i>fait</i> , | 231 |
| On some other French verbs, | 231 |
| On the French verbs <i>aller</i> and <i>venir</i> , | 231 |
| Of the English auxiliary verbs when used alone, | 232 |
| Of some other French verbs, | 233 |
| Phrases on some Gallicisms, | 234 |
| Observations on some French verbs, | 235 |
| Of some English verbs, | 236 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| General Remarks on French Construction, | 237 |
| Observations on personal pronouns—on the articles, | 239 |
| Various remarks on pronouns and conjunctions, | 240 |
| Remarks on different French parts of speech, | 241 |
| Remarks on some English parts of speech, | 244 |
| On some English sentences, | 246 |
| Other English expressions or adverbs, prepositions and conjunctions, | 249 |

FINIS.

FRENCH GRAMMAR.

PART I.

OF THE ALPHABET.

| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|-----|------|------|-----|------|-------|-----|-----|
| A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | I | J | K | L | M |
| ah | bay | say | day | a | eff | jay* | ahsh | e | jee* | kah | elh | cmm |
| N | O | P | Q | R | S | T | U | V | X | Y | Z | |
| onn | o | pay | ku* | heir | ess | tay | u* | vay | ecks | egrec | sed | |

OF THE VOWELS.

The sounds of the vowels in French are totally unlike the sounds of the same letters in English; but when any one of them occurs singly in a syllable, it invariably preserves the French sound with the following exception.

When any vowel is followed by the consonant *n* or *m*, in the same syllable, it has a nasal sound; as,

A, in the word *maman*, *mother*.

E, like the French *a*, in *maman*.

I, nearly like the English *i*, in *fine*.

O, nearly like the English *o*, in *bone*.

U, nearly like the English *u*, in *hunting*.

EXAMPLES.

| | | | |
|--------|----------|--------|-------|
| roman | romance | enfant | child |
| ambre | amber | femme | woman |
| fin | fine | bon | good |
| impoli | impolite | ombre | shade |
| brun | brown | | |
| humble | humble | | |

In these words, the consonants are to be pronounced as

* The instructor must teach the learner how to pronounce these letters, as it is impossible to convey a correct idea of their pronunciation on paper.

in English, except the *n* and *m*, which can only be learned from the teacher's lips.

A, before double *n* or *m*, loses its nasal sound ; as, flamme, *blaze* ; année, *year*.

E, in some words ending in *-ien*, preserves its usual sound ; as, bien, *well* ; chrétien, *christian*.

I, before double *m* or *n*, preserves its natural sound ; as, innocent, *innocent* ; immobile, *immoveable*.

O, before double *m* or *n*, loses its nasal sound ; as, pomme, *apple* ; bonne, *good*.

The vowel *e*, which has three sounds, requires particular attention.

It is mute when final and without an accent, as in the English word *fate* ; and the *s*, when added to form the plural, does not change the sound of the *e*, which is still silent ; as,

dame, *lady* ; dames, *ladies* ; ville, *city* ; villes, *cities*.

When marked with the grave accent, thus, è, as in accès, *access* ; succès, *success* ; père, *father* ; mère, *mother* ; the *e* has a grave or open sound like *ai* in English. If marked with a circumflex, thus, ê, as même, *same* ; blême, *wan*, *bleak*, it has the same sound of *ai*, and likewise when placed before a consonant in the same syllable ; as, fer, *iron* ; perte, *loss* ; ferme, *farm*.

When marked with the acute accent, thus, é, it is pronounced with a sharp sound ; as in pouté, *goodness* ; café, *coffee* ; été, *summer*.

As *y* is generally used instead of the double *i*, it will be treated of under the head of the compound vowels.

OF THE CONSONANTS.

Whatever may be the name of the French consonants, they correspond with the English in sound, except in the few cases which follow.

C and *G* are hard before *a*, *o*, *u*, and soft before *e*, *i*, *y*.

C hard is like *k*, as carte, *card* ; coton, *cotton* ; cupidité, *cupidity*.

C soft like *s*, as célébrité, *celebrity* ; cécité, *cecility*.

Ch like *sh* in English ; as, cher, *dear* ; chute, *fall* ; except in words derived from the Hebrew or Greek, generally pre-

per names. In such cases, *ch* is pronounced like *k*; as, chaos, chanaan.

Before every other consonant, *c* is hard; as, crime, *crime*; climat, *climate*; cravate, *cravat*.

C is soft in some cases before *a*, *o*, *u*; but then it is marked thus, with a cedilla, *ç*; as, façade, *front of a house*; leçon, *lesson*; reçu, *receipt*.

G hard in French, is the same as in English. Ex. game; but *g* soft is pronounced like *s* in the word *pleasure*; as, général, *general*; gilet, *waistcoat*.

Gn have a liquid sound, which cannot be expressed by any sign in English; as, ivrogne, *drunkard*; Espagne, *Spain*; but in certain words they are pronounced as in English. Ex. stagnant, — inexpugnable, —.

Before the other consonants, the *g* is hard; as, grâce, — globe, —.

When the letter *g* appears soft, before *a*, *o*, or *u*, that sound is produced by the interposition of the mute *e*; and by a similar interposition of a mute *u*, the hard sound is given to *g* before *e* or *i*; as, obligeant, *obliging*; geole, *gaol*; gageure, *bet*; guidon, *standart*; guerre, *war*; and in various inflections of the verb.

Gu before *i* is not always mute, viz.: aiguiser, *to whet*; aiguille, *needle*.

H is sometimes a mute and sometimes an aspirate, but is never pronounced in either case. The only difference is, that *h* aspirated is used to prevent the elision of the preceding word with the vowel that follows it, and is therefore *always* considered as a consonant, while *h* mute, being preserved, merely for the sake of etymology, does not prevent the elision of the word, it being then considered as a vowel.

The *h* aspirate is generally marked by some sign in the dictionaries; but in reading and writing, the scholar is forced to rely upon his memory, as there is no rule to distinguish that letter when a mute and when an aspirate. One, however, can be given to those who are familiar with the Latin. In all words which in French begin with an *h*, derived from words beginning with the same letter in Latin, the *h* is mute. The words héros, *hero*; harpie, *harpy*; hennir, *to neigh*; and hanter, *to haunt*; form the only exceptions to this rule.

It is aspirate in words which in French begin with an *h*

derived from Latin words beginning with any other letter; the three following are excepted: *huile, oil; heureux, happy; hièble, wall-wort.*

J before any of the vowels, has the soft sound of *g* before *e* and *i*.

L is pronounced as in English, except when it is doubled and preceded by an *i*; it then has a liquid sound, as in the English word *brilliant*. Ex. *brillant, brilliant; fille, girl; famille, family.*

P before *h*, as in English, in *philosophy, &c.*

Q has three sounds for which there can be given no rule. They may be learned from the teacher. Ex. *équateur, equator; équestre, equestrian; quêtisme, quietism.*

R is as in English, but pronounced with greater stress. When preceded by *d* or *t*, it acquires a sound which can only be learned by hearing it pronounced. Ex. *quatre, four; ordre, order; trace, footstep.*

S is hard in all cases except when single between two vowels; then it is pronounced like *z*. Ex. *rose, — base, —.*

T has the sound of *s* in words corresponding to English words, in which it has the sound of *sh*; as, *attention, — patience, — action —.*

Th is sounded like *t*, the *h* being silent. Ex. *théâtre, —.*

X has five sounds, which it will be expedient to learn from the teacher. Some correspond with the English. Ex. *sexe, sex; examen, examination; excellent, — soixante, sixty; dixième, tenth.*

OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

When several vowels come together, pronounced in one syllable, and partaking of the sound denoted in the alphabet, they are called a diphthong. To pronounce them the learner need but remember the sound of the French vowels to enable him to read without difficulty the words *fiacre, hackney-coach; lion, — fiole, phial; pierre, stone, &c.*

OF THE COMPOUND VOWELS.

Compound vowels are those which, joined together, and sounded in one syllable, do not retain the pronunciation given in the alphabet. They are only six, and plainly exhibited in the following list:

COMPOUND VOWELS. FRENCH SOUND. ENGLISH SOUND.

| | | |
|----------|---|---------------------|
| ai* | e | ai in <i>affair</i> |
| au | o | au in <i>author</i> |
| ei* | e | ai in <i>affair</i> |
| eu or œu | — | u in <i>spur</i> |
| oi* | — | o in <i>one</i> |
| ou | — | u in <i>bull</i> |

EXAMPLES.

| | | | | | | |
|----------------|-------------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|----------|
| <i>affaire</i> | <i>affair</i> | <i>reine</i> | <i>queen</i> | <i>chauve</i> | <i>other</i> | <i>h</i> |
| <i>paire</i> | <i>pair</i> | <i>peine</i> | <i>trouble</i> | <i>mauve</i> | <i>poor</i> | <i>h</i> |
| <i>plaine</i> | <i>plain</i> | <i>haleine</i> | <i>breath</i> | <i>pauvre</i> | <i>mallow</i> | <i>h</i> |
| <i>jamais</i> | <i>never</i> | <i>veine</i> | <i>vein</i> | <i>autre</i> | <i>bald</i> | <i>h</i> |
| <i>sœur</i> | <i>sister</i> | <i>moine</i> | <i>monk</i> | <i>boule</i> | <i>bowl</i> | |
| <i>meule</i> | <i>mill-stone</i> | <i>foi</i> | <i>faith</i> | <i>mou</i> | <i>soft</i> | |
| <i>cœur</i> | <i>heart</i> | <i>roi</i> | <i>king</i> | <i>clou</i> | <i>nail</i> | |
| <i>peur</i> | <i>fear</i> | <i>poivre</i> | <i>pepper</i> | <i>bijou</i> | <i>jewel</i> | |

As in some French words, these compound vowels are pronounced as two syllables, a diæresis (·) is placed over the last, denoting that each of the vowels has a distinct and appropriate sound. Ex. naïf, *artless*; baïonette, *bayonet*; adelaïde, *alice*; Moïse, *Moses*; Saül, *Saul*; Esau, *Esau*.

Ai and *ei* before *l* or *ll* become a diphthong, and both of the vowels are pronounced distinctly; the *l* is liquid, as *sérail*, *seraglio*; *muraille*, *wall*; *merveille*, *wonder*; *oreille*, *ear*. *Ai* and *ei* connected to *n* or *m* in the same syllable, have exactly the same nasal sound of *in* or *im*. (See page 1.) We pronounce and read in the same manner, *pain*, *bread*; *pin*, *pine*; *faim*, *hunger*; *fin*, *fine*; *sein*, *bosom*; *bassin*, *basin*, &c.

Oi before *n*, is pronounced as if spelt *ou-in*; as, *loin*, *far*; *coin*, *come*; *besoin*, *want*; *soin*, *care*.

The above list, in the ancient orthography, would have been subject to a great many exceptions, particularly in the verbs; but in the new orthography, called Voltarian, now adopted by the academy, and followed in this grammar, as well as in all new publications, these compound vowels are always pronounced as above, and even when con-

* See the observations on these compound vowels made below,

nected with other vowels, they still preserve their own sound, only adding that of the vowel which is introduced.* If that vowel is a mute *e*, placed either before or after the compound vowel, the sound of it will not be altered.

| | | | |
|------------------|----------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| Ex. <i>biais</i> | <i>slope</i> | <i>miauler</i> | <i>to mew</i> |
| <i>suaire</i> | <i>winding sheet</i> | <i>gruau</i> | <i>oatmeal</i> |
| <i>Dieu</i> | <i>God</i> | <i>chiourme</i> | <i>galley crew</i> |
| <i>lueur</i> | <i>light</i> | <i>rouage</i> | <i>wheel work</i> |
| <i>geai</i> | <i>jackdaw</i> | <i>bateau</i> | <i>boat</i> |
| <i>baie</i> | <i>bay</i> | <i>nageoire</i> | <i>fin</i> |
| <i>queue</i> | <i>tail</i> | <i>foie</i> | <i>liver</i> |
| <i>feu f.</i> | <i>deceased</i> | <i>boue</i> | <i>mud</i> |
| <i>peau</i> | <i>skin</i> | <i>bouée</i> | <i>buoy</i> |

When four vowels, joined together, are placed in such a way as to form two of the compound vowels of the above list, the two sounds are simply pronounced one after the other according to the list of the compound vowels.

Je jouai, I played; douairière, dowager; nouveaux, knotty; joueur, gambler.

All the vowels succeeding each other that have not been noticed in the above list, should be pronounced as diphthongs.

Y, when connected to one of our compound vowels, has the sound of two *i*'s, and the words must be pronounced as if they were spelt in that manner.

| | | | |
|----------------|--------------------|------------|-------------------|
| <i>paysan</i> | <i>country-man</i> | pronounced | <i>pai-i-san</i> |
| <i>moyen</i> | <i>means</i> | " | <i>moi-i-en</i> |
| <i>joyeux</i> | <i>joyful</i> | " | <i>joi-i-eux</i> |
| <i>royaume</i> | <i>kingdom</i> | " | <i>roi-i-aume</i> |

OBSERVATIONS IN READING.

The consonant that precedes a mute *e*, must be sounded with great stress, and the voice should stop on it almost as long as on any other syllable.

When a consonant comes between two vowels, it is joined with the second, and not with the first.

* The ancient orthography will be indicated in the verba, together with the exceptions, or rather observations, on the actual orthography, in order to enable the learner to read any book.

One or two consonants at the end of a word are generally dropped, except when they come before a vowel or *h* mute; then the last consonant is carried to the next word.

The letters *f*, *l*, and *r*, are very often excepted and sounded in many words; *n* is always pronounced.

D, when joined to a succeeding word, is sounded like *t*, un grand homme, *a great man*, pro. un grant 'omme; quand il a, *when he has*, quant il a.

Ct, like *k*, il est circonspect et réservé, *he is circum-spect and reserved*, pro. circonspeck et réservé; respect humain, *human respect*, respect humain.

G, like *k*, long hiver, *long winter*. Sang aduste, *adust blood*, lonk hiver, sank aduste.

X, like *x*, aux enfans, *to the children*, pr. aux enfans; six hommes, *six men*, pr. siz hommes.

When a word ends in *e* mute, and the following begins with a vowel or *h* mute, those two syllables are joined in pronouncing, and form but one; as, La France entière, un brave homme, &c. *a brave man, the whole France*.

When the final *n* is united to a word, beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute, it is used as belonging to the second word, and loses its nasal sound; but the vowel which precedes it, is still sounded according to the pronunciation of the vowels before *n*; as, divin esprit, *divine spirit*; vilain homme, *ugly man*. Il y en a, *there is some*, pr. il-i-a-na.

ON EUPHONY.

Euphony is the cause of many alterations and exceptions to the general rules in French. The causes that may determine these exceptions founded on euphony, are the two following. Two *e*'s mute in two successive syllables, cannot come at the end of a word, as the *e* being quite silent, the voice could not be sustained on it, because consonants cannot be pronounced without the assistance of vowels. There are many instances, however, of two, and sometimes three *e*'s mute, following each other at the beginning of a word, or in monosyllables; as, redevenir, *to grow again*; il ne me le donnera pas, *he will not give it to me*; then, the voice passing rapidly on those consonants preceding the mute *e*'s, can always stop on the syllables following. But when two *e*'s come together as above

referred to, either the first is grave; as, père, mère, nièce, or the second is acute; as, pesé, *weighed*; mené, *conducted*.

If a word ending in a vowel, (except *e* mute) be followed by a word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, as no elision can be made, the meeting of these two vowels, (called hiatus) produces a harsh sound in French, which careful writers avoid by altering the sentence. In poetry, an hiatus is called a monstrous fault. But some words are so intimately connected, that although they produce an hiatus, they cannot be used, except in the order in which they are placed; as, tu as, *thou hast*; tu avais, *thou hadst*. These expressions, on that account, are never used in poetry. The learner will be made acquainted, in the proper place, with the different means employed in observing the rule on the two *e*'s, or in destroying the hiatus.

These rules on pronunciation, although short, will be found complete, comprehensive, and far better calculated to accomplish the desired object, than if they were extended to twenty or thirty pages, as in some grammars, or entirely excluded, as in others. The pronunciation of our language, although fixed by rules, has always appeared difficult, because it was exposed in a confused manner; and I have endeavored to simplify and explain these rules by a clear and easy method. As the exceptions are only learned by practice, it would have been useless to have added them to the foregoing observations, unless the student should choose to learn a dictionary by heart, before he has acquired any knowledge of the principles of the language.

As for those difficulties, of which the natives themselves are so often ignorant, the best way to learn them is to follow a French grammar, which it is my intention, in conformity to that of all modern grammarians, to put into the hands of the scholars who would wish to become perfect after they are sufficiently advanced.

As soon as the learner has acquired a sufficient knowledge of the French pronunciation to be able to read the verb *avoir*, *to have*, (which most of the scholars after the first lesson can do) he must commit it to memory; for the verbs being the longest and most tedious part of our language, too much time cannot be given to them.

The above verb must be learned affirmatively, negatively,

interrogatively, and interro-negatively, as explained hereafter; that will impress it better in the mind of the scholar, who will then pass to the verb *to be*, which he will learn the same way; then to the verb *to speak*; and on this last verb he must write interrogative and negative verbs with the English, in order to get accustomed to their meaning; after which he will conjugate at least one verb on each of the difficulties there mentioned, and will then become acquainted with the conjugation of about 4000 verbs, out of the 5000 which compose our language.

The exercises are so arranged, that the verbs on the different conjugations will only be introduced when it is likely that the scholar is able to write them.

All undeclinable words that can be found in a dictionary, will be used in these exercises for the purpose of making the student acquainted with them.

If the pupil be very young, he may be prepared for the first exercise by short sentences, or coalition of words dictated by the teacher.

OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

We distinguish in French, ten sorts of words, which are called parts of speech. They are *the noun or substantive, article, adjective, pronoun, verb, participle, adverb, preposition, conjunction and interjection*.

Although it has been attempted in this grammar to follow the natural order given to the parts of speech, that order has been broken in some instances, when the advancement of the learner would seem to require it.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE NOUN OR SUBSTANTIVE.

The substantive or noun, is a word which serves to name a person or thing; as, *Pierre, Peter; livre, book*.

We call substantive proper, or proper name, that which is applied to a particular person or thing; as, *César, Caesar*;

Londres, *London*; Paris, — and substantive common, that which belongs to a whole class of objects; as, homme, *man*; cheval, *horse*; livre, *book*; those words answering for any man, any horse, any book.

OF THE GENDER AND NUMBER.

There are but two genders in French, the masculine and the feminine; so that all substantives which are in the neuter gender in English, are either masculine or feminine in French.

There are two numbers, the singular and plural. The plural is as in English, generally formed by adding *s* to the singular; the exceptions to that general rule will follow the explanation on the genders.

As the distinction of the two genders may present some difficulty, the following explanations, although they may appear pretty long, will remove it entirely.

A final *e* mute, is the distinguishing mark of the feminine gender; thus, when a word ends in *e* mute, it is rather to be thought feminine than masculine.

Every other final letter, even *é* acute, is the sign of the masculine gender. But these cannot be taken as rules until the following observations are applied.

As there are words expressing beings which are naturally masculine or feminine, these substantives, whatever be their terminations, are of the gender of the sex to which they respectively belong.

The following are feminine, although applied to man:

Dupe, *dupe*; estafette, *express*; garde, *guard*; personne, *person*; sentinelle, *sentinel*; vedette, *sentinel on horseback*; vigie, *man on the look out*.

All names of *animals*, almost all quadrupeds, when the male is distinguished from the female by a different appellation, preserve the gender of their sex. The gender of *birds, fishes, reptiles, insects, and all animals, the name of which includes both the male and the female*, is distinguished by the termination.

Besides those, all names of the *days, months, and seasons, those of trees, metals, colors, languages, and all names of measures, weights, &c.* belonging to the new metrical system, *numbers, and fractions*, in arithmetic, are masculine.

All names of *empires, states and kingdoms*, follow the gender of their terminations; feminine, when ending in *e* mute, and if not, masculine; except *Le Mexique, Mexico*; *Le Bengale, Bengal*; *Le Péloponèse, Peloponessus*.

After the remarks on the gender of the substantives, according to the signification, have been well understood, the learner will come to the following lists, according to the termination, showing the gender of all other words that could not be applied to any of the foregoing observations.*

A LIST OF ALL SUBSTANTIVES NOT ENDING IN *e* MUTE,
WHICH ARE FEMININE, CONTRARY TO THE RULE.

All words of the following terminations are feminine.

| | | | | | |
|---------|---|------|---|--------------------------|-------------|
| 1100 in | { | cion | } | pronounced <i>sion</i> . | EXCEPTIONS. |
| | | sion | | | |
| | | tion | | | |
| | | xion | | | |
| | | gion | | | |
| | | nion | | | |
| | | | | | bastion. |

(Words which terminate in the above manner, generally correspond to a similar English substantive.)

500 in *té*, *aparté, aside; arrêté, resolution*;
(generally corresponding to *bénédicté, grace before meals*;
an English word ending in *ty*.) *comité, committee; comté,*
county; côté, side; été, sum-

* A person who at first casts his eyes on these lists, will think it easier to get the gender out of the dictionary than to run over such long tables; but after the practice of a few days, he will become so well acquainted with the principal terminations, that he will be able, without referring to his books, or even to the list, to give immediately the gender of several thousand words.

As for those terminations that have but few substantives, and many exceptions, and particularly the list of numerous masculine words ending in *e* mute, it is only after a certain time that they can become profitable, and are placed here only to make the tables more complete.

mer; *pâté, pie*; *traité, treaty*;
thé, tea.

80 in *eur*, (when not applied to
man,).....

bonheur, happiness; *malheur,*
misfortune; *chœur, chorus*;
cœur, heart; *équateur, equator*;
honneur, honor; *labeur, labor*;
pleurs, tears.

40 in *son & zon*, (when prece-
ded by a vowel.).....

blason, blazon; *diapason, —*
gason, greenturf; *horison, —*
poison, — oison, gosling; *ti-*
son, fire-brand.

As besides those of the above termination, 50 substan-
tives are excepted, it will perhaps be of some assistance to
the learner to know, that

All words ending in $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{lon} \\ \text{ron} \\ \text{out} \end{array} \right\}$ (200) are masculine without ex-
ception.

All words of the following termina-
tions, are masculine.

| | | | |
|--|------------|--|---------------------------------------|
| | ment (700) | (generally corres- ponding to similar English words.)..... | EXCEPTIONS. |
| | au (200) | | jument, <i>mare</i> |
| | in (200) | | eau, <i>water</i> ; <i>peau, skin</i> |
| | an (100) | | fin, <i>end</i> ; <i>main, hand</i> |
| | et (100) | | maman, <i>mamma</i> |
| | uit (80) | | forêt, <i>forest</i> |
| | ot (50) | | nuit, <i>night</i> |
| | | | dot, <i>dowry</i> |

The fifty feminine substantives not ending in *e* mute, and
not depending on any of the foregoing rules and observa-
tions, are

| | | | |
|---------------|-------------------|----------|-------------------|
| alluvion | <i>alluvion</i> | faim | <i>hunger</i> |
| amitié | <i>friendship</i> | faux | <i>scythe</i> |
| après-midi | <i>afternoon</i> | foi | <i>faith</i> |
| boisson | <i>drink</i> | fois | <i>time, fold</i> |
| chair | <i>flesh</i> | fourmi | <i>ant</i> |
| chanson | <i>song</i> | gent | <i>tribe</i> |
| chauve-souris | <i>bat</i> | glu | <i>bird lime</i> |
| chaux | <i>lime</i> | inimitié | <i>enmity</i> |
| clef | <i>key</i> | leçon | <i>lesson</i> |
| croix | <i>cross</i> | loi | <i>law</i> |

| | | | |
|-------------|----------------------|-----------|--------------------------|
| contrefaçon | counterfeiting | perdrix | partridge |
| cour | court, yard | pitié | pity |
| cuiller | spoon | poix | pitch |
| dent | tooth | rançon | ransom |
| façon | { fashion, manner | rebellion | rebellion |
| mer | sea | soif | thirst |
| merci | thanks, mercy | souris | { when it means mouse |
| moisson | harvest | surdent | gag-tooth |
| moitié | half | tribu | tribe |
| mort | death | tour | { when it means tower |
| nef | nave of a church | toux | cough |
| noël | christmas | vertu | virtue |
| noix | nut | vis | screw |
| paix | peace | voix | voice |
| part | share | | |

A LIST OF ALL THE WORDS ENDING IN *e* MUTE, that are of the masculine gender, contrary to the rule.

All substantives terminating as follows, are masculine.

EXCEPTIONS.

| | |
|------------|---|
| tère..... | artère, artery. |
| toire..... | écritoire, inkstand; histoire, history; victoire, victory. |
| cle..... | boucle, buckle; béscles, temple-glasses; débacle, breaking of the ice. |
| ile..... | argile, white clay; bile, — huile, oil; île, island; toile, linen; tuile, tyle; voile, (when standing for sail.) |
| ste..... | batiste, linen cambric; caste, tribe; liste, list; peste, plague; piste, track; poste, (when standing for post office;) veste, round jacket. |
| in } ice | avarice, — cicatrice — épice, spice; immondico, filth; injustice, — justice, — lice, lists; malice, — notice, — office, (when meaning pantry;) police, — |
| tre | bistre, — chartre, charter; dartre, scarf; épître, epistle; fenêtre, window; guêtre, spatterdash; huitre, oyster; lettre, letter; mitre, — montre, watch, time-piece; outre, leather vessel; poutre, beam; rencontre, encounter; vitre, glass-pane. |
| ge | allège, lighter; auge, trough; éponge, sponge; horloge, clock; image, — jauge, gage; cage, — loge, lodge; nage, swimming; neige, snow; orge, barley; page, (when standing for a page of a book) plage, beach; rage, — serge, — tige, stock of a tree; toge, toga. |

A EXCEPTIONS.

me *alarme, alarm; ame, soul; amertume, bitterness; anagramme, anagram; arme, weapon; brume, fog; chiourme, a galley's crew; cime, top; coutume, custom; crème, cream; dime, tithe; écume, foam; enclume, anvil; énigme, riddle; épigramme, epigram; estime, esteem; ferme, farm; flamme, blaze; frime, show; gamme, gamut; gomme, gum; lame, blade; larme, tear; légitime, portion or patrimony; lime, file; maxime, maxim; palme, (when standing for the branch of a palm tree;) paume tennis, palm of the hand; plume, pen; pomme, apple; rame, oar, ream; réforme, reformation; sème, (when a sum of money;) trame, woof; victime, victim.*

The following substantives are those ending in *e* mute which are masculine, and to which the foregoing rules cannot be applied.

| | | | |
|------------|------------------------|------------|----------------------|
| acre | — | camée | — |
| acrostiche | <i>acrostic</i> | camphre | <i>camphor</i> |
| acte | <i>act</i> | cancre | <i>crab-fish</i> |
| ambe | — | candelabre | <i>chandelier</i> |
| amulette | <i>amulet</i> | cantique | <i>canticle</i> |
| animalcule | — | capitole | <i>capitol</i> |
| antidote | — | capricorne | <i>capricorn</i> |
| antipode | — | carosse | <i>coach</i> |
| apogée | <i>apogee</i> | casque | <i>helmet</i> |
| apologue | — | catafalque | <i>catafalco</i> |
| aromate | — | catalogue | — |
| augure | <i>augury</i> | catarrhe | <i>catarrh</i> |
| automate | <i>automaton</i> | cénotaphe | <i>cenotaph</i> |
| axe | <i>axis</i> | chanvre | <i>hemp</i> |
| bague | <i>ring</i> | chiffre | <i>cypher figure</i> |
| beurre | <i>butter</i> | ciboire | <i>pyx</i> |
| bécarre | { <i>natural</i> | cidre | <i>cider</i> |
| | { (in music) | cimeterre | <i>scimitar</i> |
| bréviaire | <i>breviary</i> | cimetière | { <i>burying</i> |
| buffle | <i>buffalo</i> | | { <i>ground</i> |
| cable | — | cinabre | <i>cinnabar</i> |
| cadavre | <i>corpse</i> | cippe | <i>cippus</i> |
| cadre | <i>frame</i> | cirque | <i>circus</i> |
| caducée | <i>mercury's wand</i> | cloaque | <i>sink</i> |
| calibre | <i>bore of a gun</i> | code | — |
| calque | <i>counter drawing</i> | codicille | <i>codicil</i> |
| alvaire | <i>calvary</i> | coffre | <i>chest</i> |

| | | | |
|--------------|--------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|
| colloque | <i>colloquy</i> | empirée | <i>empyrean</i> |
| colosse | <i>colossus</i> | ensemble | <i>whole</i> |
| comble | <i>top</i> | épilogue | — |
| comestible | <i>eatables</i> | épisode | — |
| commentaire | <i>commentary</i> | équilibre | <i>equilibrium</i> |
| cône | — | équinoxe | <i>equinox</i> |
| conte | <i>tale</i> | érysipèle | <i>erysipelas</i> |
| contrôle | <i>control</i> | esclandre | <i>uproar</i> |
| coryphée | <i>coryphaeus</i> | espace | <i>space</i> |
| cothurne | <i>buskin</i> | exemplaire | <i>copy of a book</i> |
| coude | <i>elbow</i> | exode | <i>exodus</i> |
| crabe | <i>crab</i> | exorde | <i>exordium</i> |
| crâne | <i>skull</i> | fiacre | <i>hack</i> |
| crêpe | <i>crape</i> | fleuve | <i>large river</i> |
| crépuscule | <i>twilight</i> | foie | <i>liver</i> |
| crible | <i>sieve</i> | foudre | <i>when a large tun</i> |
| cube | — | génie | <i>genius</i> |
| culte | <i>worship</i> | génévire | <i>gin</i> |
| cygne | <i>swan</i> | genre | <i>gender, kind</i> |
| cylindre | <i>cylinder</i> | gingembre | <i>ginger</i> |
| commerce | — | girofle | <i>cloves</i> |
| compte | <i>account</i> | gîte | <i>hare's form</i> |
| conciliabule | <i>conventicle</i> | glaive | <i>sword</i> |
| conclave | — | globe | — |
| concombre | <i>cucumber</i> | golfe | <i>gulf</i> |
| déboire | <i>twang</i> | gouffre | <i>abyss</i> |
| décatalogue | — | grade | <i>degree</i> |
| dédale | <i>labyrinth</i> | grimoire | <i>conjuror's book</i> |
| délire | <i>delirium</i> | groupe | <i>group</i> |
| désordre | <i>disorder</i> | guide | <i>when guide, director</i> |
| dialecte | <i>dialect</i> | gymnase | <i>gymnasium</i> |
| dialogue | — | hâle | <i>sunburning</i> |
| dictionnaire | <i>dictionary</i> | hâvre | <i>haven</i> |
| diocèse | — | hémisphère | — |
| disque | <i>disk</i> | hémistiche | <i>hemistich</i> |
| distique | <i>distick</i> | hiéroglyphe | <i>hieroglyphic</i> |
| dithyrambe | <i>dithyrambus</i> | horoscope | — |
| dividende | <i>dividend</i> | hyménée | <i>wedlock</i> |
| divorce | — | immeuble | <i>real state</i> |
| domaine | <i>domain</i> | incendie | <i>conflagration</i> |
| doute | <i>doubt</i> | insecte | <i>insect</i> |
| dromadaire | <i>dromedary</i> | interligne | <i>interline</i> |
| ellébore | <i>hellebore</i> | intermède | <i>interlude</i> |
| émétique | <i>emetic</i> | intervalle | <i>interval</i> |
| empire | — | | |

| | | | |
|-------------|---------------------------|-------------|----------------------------|
| inventaire | <i>inventory</i> | nombre | <i>number</i> |
| ivoire | <i>ivory</i> | numéraire | <i>coin, money</i> |
| jaspé | <i>jasper</i> | obélisque | <i>obelisk</i> |
| jeûne | <i>fast</i> | ongle | <i>nail</i> |
| labyrinthe | <i>labyrinth</i> | opprobe | <i>disgrace</i> |
| Lévitique | <i>Leviticus</i> | opuscule | <i>small composition</i> |
| libelle | <i>libel</i> | orbe | <i>orb</i> |
| lièvre | <i>hare</i> | ordre | <i>order</i> |
| lierre | <i>ivy</i> | pacte | <i>pact</i> |
| livre | <i>when a book</i> | pampre | <i>vineyard leaf</i> |
| logogriphe | <i>logogriph</i> | panache | <i>bunch of feathers</i> |
| lucré | — | panégyrique | <i>panegyrick</i> |
| luminaire | <i>luminary</i> | paradoxe | <i>paradox</i> |
| luxe | <i>luxury</i> | paragraphe | <i>paragraph</i> |
| lycée | <i>lyceum</i> | paraphe | <i>flourish insining</i> |
| malaise | <i>uneasiness</i> | parapluie | <i>umbrella</i> |
| manche | <i>when handle</i> | parjure | <i>perjury</i> |
| manque | <i>want</i> | parterre | <i>{ pit in a theatre,</i> |
| marbre | <i>marble</i> | | <i>flower garden</i> |
| masque | <i>mask</i> | patrimoine | <i>patrimony</i> |
| massacre | — | pédicule | <i>pedicle</i> |
| mausolée | <i>mausoleum</i> | peigne | <i>comb</i> |
| membre | <i>member, limb</i> | pène | <i>bolt of a lock</i> |
| mémoire | <i>when bill</i> | pentateuque | <i>pentateuch</i> |
| mercure | <i>mercury</i> | perigée | — |
| merle | <i>blackbird</i> | péritoine | <i>peritoneum</i> |
| mérite | <i>merit</i> | personne | <i>when no body</i> |
| météore | <i>meteor</i> | pétale | <i>petal</i> |
| meuble | <i>piece of furniture</i> | peuple | <i>people</i> |
| microscope | — | phare | <i>light-house</i> |
| mode | <i>when mood</i> | phénomène | <i>phenomenon</i> |
| modèle | <i>model</i> | phoque | <i>phoca</i> |
| monde | <i>world</i> | phosphore | <i>phosphorus</i> |
| monologue | — | pique | <i>spade at cards</i> |
| monopole | <i>monopoly</i> | planisphère | — |
| monticule | <i>hillock</i> | poivre | <i>pepper</i> |
| moule, when | <i>mould, cast, form</i> | pôle | — |
| multiplie | <i>multiplicand</i> | pore | — |
| murmure | <i>murmur</i> | porche | <i>porch</i> |
| musée | <i>museum</i> | porphyre | <i>porphyry</i> |
| narcisse | <i>daffodil</i> | portique | <i>portico</i> |
| navire | <i>ship</i> | pouce | <i>thumb, inch</i> |
| nécessaire | <i>travelling box</i> | préambule | <i>preamble</i> |
| négoce | <i>trade</i> | précepte | <i>precept</i> |

| | | | |
|------------|---------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|
| prêche | <i>protestant meeting</i> | sourire | <i>smile</i> |
| prélude | — | squelette | <i>skeleton</i> |
| prétexte | <i>pretext</i> | stygmate | <i>stigma</i> |
| prologue | — | suaire | <i>winding sheet</i> |
| prône | <i>short sermon</i> | subsidié | <i>subsidy</i> |
| protocole | <i>protocol</i> | sucrer | <i>sugar</i> |
| pygmée | <i>pigmy</i> | syllabaire | <i>spelling book</i> |
| quaterne | — | symbole | <i>symbol</i> |
| quinconce | <i>quincunx</i> | télégraphe | <i>telegraph</i> |
| raïble | <i>saddle of venison</i> | télescope | — |
| règne | <i>reign</i> | temple | — |
| réliquaire | <i>shrine for relics</i> | timbre | <i>stamp</i> |
| remède | <i>remedy</i> | tintamarre | <i>great noise</i> |
| repaire | <i>haunt</i> | tonnerre | <i>thunder</i> |
| reproche | <i>reproach</i> | topique | <i>topick</i> |
| rêve | <i>dream</i> | trône | <i>trunk of a statue</i> |
| reverberé | — | trèfle | <i>trefoil</i> |
| risque | <i>risk</i> | triomphe | <i>triumph</i> |
| rôle | <i>roll</i> | trône | <i>throne</i> |
| rosaire | <i>rosary</i> | trope | — |
| rouble | — | trophée | <i>trophy</i> |
| sable | — | tropique | <i>tropic</i> |
| sabre | — | trouble | — |
| sacerdoce | — | tumulte | <i>tumult</i> |
| sacre | <i>consecration</i> | type | — |
| salaire | <i>salary</i> | ulcère | <i>ulcer</i> |
| sanctuaire | <i>sanctuary</i> | vague | — |
| scandale | <i>public offence</i> | vase | <i>when vase, vessel</i> |
| scapulaire | <i>scapulary</i> | vaudeville | <i>ballad, short comedy</i> |
| scrupule | <i>scruple</i> | véhicule | <i>vehicle</i> |
| seigle | <i>rye</i> | verbe | <i>verb</i> |
| séminaire | <i>seminary</i> | verre | <i>glass</i> |
| sépulchre | <i>sepulchre</i> | vestibule | <i>entry</i> |
| sexe | <i>sex</i> | viatique | <i>viaticum</i> |
| signe | <i>sign, token</i> | vide | <i>vacuum</i> |
| silence | — | vignoble | <i>vineyard-plot</i> |
| simple | <i>medicinal herb</i> | vinaigre | <i>vinegar</i> |
| simulacre | — | violoncelle | <i>violoncello</i> |
| site | — | viscère | <i>intestine</i> |
| socque | <i>sandal</i> | vocabulaire | <i>vocabulary</i> |
| soliloque | <i>soliloquy</i> | zèle | <i>zeal</i> |
| souffle | <i>breath</i> | zodiaque | <i>zodiac</i> |
| souffre | <i>sulphur</i> | | |

The learner must know that the word *when*, prefixed in some instances to English words, in the above lists, means that the French word corresponding to it, belongs to the gender spoken of, only when it is used in that acceptation; for instance, the word *livre* is masculine when it means *book*, but feminine, under any other acceptation: viz. *pound*, &c.

REMARK. The words *délice*, delight, and *orgue*, organ, are masculine in the singular, and feminine in the plural.

The plural substantive *gens*, people, is masculine before an adjective, and feminine after.

As exercises on the genders cannot be written to advantage unless the scholar be acquainted with the articles and the prepositions which generally go with them, we shall immediately pass to these parts of speech; after which we shall examine the irregularities in the formations of the plural.

CHAPTER II.

OF THE FRENCH ARTICLES AND PREPOSITIONS DE AND A.

Articles and prepositions are used both in French and English to modify the substantives, or to extend their signification.

The French article is a short word placed before a substantive to determine its number or gender.

We have but one article in French, which corresponds to the English definite article *the*. *Le*, *masc. sing*; *la*, *fem. sing*; *les*, *plur.* for both genders.

But, in order to render the study of the French language more easy, we shall speak of two parts of speech which resemble the articles, and which for convenience we shall hereafter use as articles. The first is the adjective *un*, *masc. une*, *fem.* equivalent to the English indefinite article *a* or *an*. The second, which is called partitive, and answers to the English pronouns *some* or *any*, will be explained in a chapter appropriated for that purpose.

The learner will therefore express the article *the*, by *Le* before a noun masculine singular; as, *le roi*, the king. *La*, before a noun feminine singular, *la reine*, the queen.

Les before plural nouns of either gender, *les sujets*, the subjects.

And *a* or *an* by

Un before a noun masculine sing. ; as, *un père*, a father.

Une before a noun fem. sing. *une mère*, a mother.

REMARK. When *le* or *la* comes before words beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, the *e* or *a* is cut off, and supplied by an apostrophe ; as, *l'empereur*, the emperor ; *l'impératrice*, the empress. This suppression is called an elision.

It will be remembered that the plural is generally formed by adding *s*.

EXERCISES.

I have the satisfaction. You have the intention. They have the portions. She has the pensions. Have the goodness. We shall have the pie. I had the tea. She had the facility. He has the honesty. She would have the flower. We have had the liquor. She has a sister. He has a heart. We had a house. The horseman has a spur. We had a balloon. The colonel had a horse ; let him have a mare. The goldsmith has the gold, and the broker has the silver. The queen has the authority, and the officer shall have the regiment. You would have the hat. You had the rabbit ; but the hatter has the skin. We will have the billet. We would have had the money. Let them have the colours, because I will have the white and you will have the red. Let us have the tree in the garden ; then we will have the fruit, and you will have the flowers.

The prepositions more especially connected to the French articles and substantives are

De, *of*, or *from*, and sometimes *with*.

A, *to*, and sometimes *at*.

The *e* in *de* is cut off before a vowel, or *h* mute, and supplied by an apostrophe.

These prepositions can be used alone when the substantive does not require any article, or is preceded by a word that performs the same office as will be hereafter explained. They must also be repeated before every substantive.

All proper names of men, and almost all those of towns, cities and villages, do not take the article, but are used thus :

| | | | |
|-----------|-----------------|-----------|-------------------|
| Pierre | <i>Peter</i> | Orléans | <i>Orléans</i> |
| de Pierre | <i>of Peter</i> | d'Orléans | <i>of Orleans</i> |
| à Pierre | <i>to Peter</i> | à Orléans | <i>to Orleans</i> |

The four parts of the world, all names of empires, states, kingdoms, rivers, mountains, and some islands and cities, taking the definite article *le, la, les*, will fall under the rules of that article.

We will now examine the prepositions in regard to their relations with the articles.

EXAMPLE of the preposition *de* or *d'*, with the indefinite article *un* or *une*.

| | | | |
|------------|-----------------|-------------|-------------------|
| d'un homme | <i>of a man</i> | d'une femme | <i>of a woman</i> |
| à un homme | <i>to a man</i> | à une femme | <i>to a woman</i> |

When the preposition *de*, signifying *of, from* or *with*, or *d'*, signifying *to* or *at*, comes before the articles *le, la, les*, it is used in the same way as in English, only observing the elision in *le* and *la* before a vowel or *h* mute.

| | | | |
|----------------|---------------------|------------|----------------------|
| Ex. de l'homme | <i>of the man</i> | de la mère | <i>of the mother</i> |
| à l'enfant | <i>to the child</i> | à la fille | <i>to the girl</i> |

But there is an important exception that the learner must try to understand perfectly before he proceeds any further. According to the above directions, he would translate the definite article *the*, by *le, la, les*, or by *l'* in the singular before a vowel or *h* mute; and the prepositions *of* or *to*, by *de* or *d'*. Thus, he would translate the prepositions and articles *of the* and *to the* by *de le* and *d'le*, before a masculine singular substantive, beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirate, as no elision could take place, and by *de les* and *d'les*, before a plural substantive.

| | | | |
|------------------|--------------------------|---------------|--------------------------|
| Ex. De le maître | <i>for of the master</i> | De les livres | <i>for of the books</i> |
| à le héros | <i>for to the hero</i> | à les tables | <i>for to the tables</i> |

But the scholar must know that this would be improper. He must NEVER use these words as above written, but ought to contract them as follows :

| | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| De le into du—du maître | De les into des—des livres |
| à le into au—au héros | à les into aux—aux tables |

In all other cases, the preposition and article must be used

separately, as in English. The student must also be careful to observe the rule respecting the gender, and the elision of *e* and *a* before a vowel.

This exception, so often overlooked by beginners, must be thoroughly understood ; and I recommend the following method, which I have found useful in practice.

Whenever you have to express a substantive preceded by one of these two prepositions and the definite article, observe whether it is in the singular, or plural number. If it be in the plural, you need pay no regard to its gender or first letter ; but you must use it thus :

PLURAL.

| | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
| Les anges, | <i>the angels</i> |
| des anges, and not de les | <i>of the angels</i> |
| aux anges, and not à les | <i>to the angels</i> |

If the substantive be in the singular number, and its first letter be a vowel, or *h* mute, it is not necessary to know its gender, as it must be written thus :

SINGULAR.

| | | | |
|-------------|---------------------|--------------|-----------------------|
| L'enfant | <i>the child</i> | l'héroïne | <i>the heroine</i> |
| de l'enfant | <i>of the child</i> | de l'héroïne | <i>of the heroine</i> |
| à l'enfant | <i>to the child</i> | à l'héroïne | <i>to the heroine</i> |

Should the substantive be singular, and should its first letter be a consonant, or *h* aspirated, then the article must agree with it in gender ; and it must be written thus :

| | |
|--------------------------|-------------|
| Le hameau | La ville |
| du hameau, and not de le | de la ville |
| au hameau, and not à le | à la ville |

REMARK. The French article and preposition must be repeated before every substantive, and agree with it in gender and number.

As it is desirable that good English be given to be translated into good French, and that the exercises may not be clogged by things of little importance, it will be well to remark here, that as we have no possessive case in French, and consequently as we cannot express the possessive by *s*, with an apostrophe, we make use of the preposition *de*, of. Thus, instead of saying Peter's book, we say the book of Peter, reversing the two substantives, when in the possessive case in English. The scholar will translate *John's hat*, le chapeau de Jean, *the hat of John* ; *the general's sword*, l'épée du général, *the sword of the general*, &c.

EXERCISE.

Have you John's hat? Peter has the general's sword. He had a soldier's courage, and the fate of a warrior. Have they the plan of London? Shall I have the mayor's protection? I shall have the officer's communication to-morrow. William's brother and Paul's sister have Mary's books. He had the Captain's waistcoat. Had you the plan of the road from New-York to Boston? Had you the sailors' petition to the admiral? She had Paul's letter to a friend. Has she the copy of Voltaire's letter to a lady? The soldiers had the emperor's orders. Had you La Fontaine's fables? When you had the brother's musical instrument, I had the sister's music. He has had the artist's picture. He had the message of the queen to the emperor. I have the letters of the author of the *Henriad* to the sister of Frederick. Have you a copy of the letter of the corporation to the members of the society?

OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF THE FRENCH SUBSTANTIVES.

To form the plural of French nouns, the letter *s* must be added to the singular; as, *homme, man; hommes, men*. The following are exceptions to this rule.

All nouns ending in *s*, *x*, and *z*, remain the same in the plural as they are in the singular. Ex.

| | | | |
|---------|------------------|----------|-------------------|
| Le fils | <i>the son</i> | les fils | <i>the sons</i> |
| la voix | <i>the voice</i> | les voix | <i>the voices</i> |
| le nez | <i>the nose</i> | les nez | <i>the noses</i> |

All those which end in *au*, *eu*, or *œu*, form their plural by having *x* added to their singular; as,

| | | | |
|-----------|-----------------|-------------|------------------|
| Le bateau | <i>the boat</i> | les bateaux | <i>the boats</i> |
| le feu | <i>the fire</i> | les feux | <i>the fires</i> |
| le vœu | <i>the vow</i> | les vœux | <i>the vows</i> |

Nouns ending in *al*, change *al* into *aux*; as,

| | | | |
|-----------|------------------|-------------|-------------------|
| Le cheval | <i>the horse</i> | les chevaux | <i>the horses</i> |
| Le mal | <i>the evil</i> | les maux | <i>the evils</i> |

N. B. A few nouns in *al* follow the general rule, and take *s* after the singular for the formation of the plural; these are *bal, ball; régat, regale; carnaval, carnival; local, place*, and some few others now out of use.

Polysyllables ending in *ant* or *ent*, now drop the *t* and take *s*; but monosyllables retain the *t*; as,

| | | | |
|-----------|-------------------|------------|---------------------|
| L'enfant | <i>the child</i> | Les enfans | <i>the children</i> |
| le moment | <i>the moment</i> | les momens | <i>the moments</i> |
| le gant | <i>the glove</i> | les gants | <i>the gloves</i> |
| la dent | <i>the tooth</i> | les dents | <i>the teeth</i> |

Note. The following nouns ending in *ou* take *x* in the plural :

Bijou, *jewel*; caillou, *pebble*; chou, *cabbage*, genou, *knee*; hibou, *owl*; joujou, *plaything*.

The following nouns in *ail*, change *ail* into *aux* :

| | | | |
|-----------|-----------------|---------|-------------|
| Bail | <i>lease</i> | corail | — |
| soupirail | <i>air hole</i> | travail | <i>work</i> |

These six are irregular.

| | | | |
|--------|----------------|----------|--------------------------|
| Ail | <i>garlick</i> | aulx | <i>heads of garlick.</i> |
| bétail | <i>cattle</i> | bestiaux | <i>cattle</i> |
| œil* | <i>eye</i> | yeux | <i>eyes</i> |

Aïeul, *grandfather*, used in the plural and signifying *ancestors*, makes aïeux; but if it means *grandfathers*, it is regular, and makes aïeuls.

Ciel, when it signifies *sky* or *heaven*, changes into *cieux*; but, when used to express the *sky in painting*, or the *top of a bedstead*, it forms its plural regularly, ciels.

Bercail, *sheepfold*, has no plural.

EXERCISE.

The flowers of the gardens. The palaces of the kings. The voices of the children. Shall we have the pine apples? The walnuts of the orchard. The noses of the dogs. Shall they have the pictures? The birds have a cage. The gods of the pagans. Let ~~me~~ have the jewels of the princess. I would not have the cabbages of the market. He had not the horses of the stable. I have not had the ladies' fans. The helm of the vessel. The actions of my ancestors. The works of the Romans. The parents of the children. The teeth of a comb. The heads of the nails. The bolts of the door. The gloves of

* Œil, in the word œil-de-bœuf, *oval*, bull's eye, forms its plural regularly, œils-de-bœuf.

a lady. The sincerity of the vows. The expression of the eyes. Has he the feathers of the birds? Has she not the ribbons of the hat? We have not had the newspapers.

OF THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

We do not find in our modern French grammars, any explanation of a partitive article. But some authors of merit, who have written on the difficulties of the language, speak of this article and of its use. The partitive article being prefixed to a substantive, limits its meaning to a part of a whole, or to some individuals of a species. It is represented in English by the words *some*, or *any*, either expressed or understood.

The French partitive article is expressed by the preposition *de*, of, followed by the article *le*, *la*, or *les*, the, and used exactly in the same manner as the definite article preceded by the preposition *of*.

EXAMPLE...*de l'argent* *some money* *de la peine* *some trouble*
 du pain *some bread* *des plumes* *some pens*

(See page 20, on elision, contraction, agreement, &c.)

The nature of this article shows its sense and destination. It was perhaps originally preceded by some other words, such as *une partie*, a part, *un nombre*, a number, &c. the continual repetition of which has since been spared. So that the preposition *de*, and the definite article *le*, *la*, *les*, have, by way of ellipsis, passed into habitual use.

Therefore, any substantive preceded in English by *some* or *any*, must be expressed in French as if preceded by *of*, *the*, *du*, *de l'*, *de la*, *des*, which must be used, and likewise repeated before every substantive, in accordance with the rules respecting the gender, &c.

EXERCISE.

We have some butter, and as you have some sugar, we shall have some cakes by and by. Have you any salad? Have they not some oil and vinegar? Will they have some tea and milk? She has some chicken. Has she not some cheese? He had some pride. Have you any ink and pens? He had some lobster. The financier has some gold and silver. I had some patience. We had some relations. She had some interest. They had some subscribers. Had they not some friends?

CHAPTER III.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

An adjective is a word which expresses the quality of the substantive to which it is added.

A word is known to be an adjective, when it can be connected with the word *personne*, person; or *chose*, thing; as, bon, *good*; mauvais, *bad*; grand, *large*; petit, *small*.

In French, the adjective must agree, in gender and number, with the substantive to which it is added.

OF THE FORMATION OF THE FEMININE AND PLURAL OF THE FRENCH ADJECTIVES.

The adjective is generally made feminine by the addition of *e* mute to the masculine; as, *mauvais*, bad; feminine, *mauvaise*.

The plural of adjectives is generally formed in the same manner as that of substantives, and is subject to the same exceptions. Therefore, if the adjective be feminine, it will merely take *as*; as it always ends in *e* mute, in the feminine singular.

OF THE PLACE OF THE FRENCH ADJECTIVES.

Some adjectives are placed before and some after the substantive. Generally speaking, the longer word of the two is used last. The following are always placed before the substantive: *Beau*, fine; *bon*, good; *brave*, brave; *cher*, dear; *chétif*, mean; *gallant*, gallant; *grand*, large; *gros*, big; *jeune*, young; *joli*, pretty; *méchant*, wicked; *mauvais*, bad; *meilleur*, better; *moindre*, less; *honnête*, honest; *petit*, small; *saint*, saint; *vieux*, old; *vrai*, true.

Adjectives formed from the present or past participle—those expressing the name of a *nation*, colour, *form* or *size*, must be put after the substantive. *Prochain*, next; *dernier*, last; when accompanying the days of the week, month or year, are likewise placed after the substantive.

The teacher must accustom the student to place the adjectives correctly. A little practice will overcome any of these seeming difficulties.

EXERCISE.*

I am prudent. He is wicked. She is learned. We shall be polite. They were informed. Mary was decent. John's sister was pretty. We were lucky. The king's soldiers should be courageous. Let us be prudent. Be thou fortunate. The laws will be respected. He has powerful recommendations. The neighbors' houses are high, and well situated. I have not a square table. I would have a white hat. The scholar had an English grammar. I have a coat in (1) the French fashion. The American manners. The ink is bad, but the pens are excellent. I will be there next Tuesday. He was here last Monday. I will be disengaged (2) next Saturday or Sunday.

EXCEPTIONS ON THE FORMATION OF THE FEMININE OF FRENCH ADJECTIVES.

There are some exceptions to the rule which treats of the formation of the feminine of French adjectives. They are as follows :

Adjectives ending in *e* mute, do not require a second *e* in the feminine, but remain the same as in the masculine.

| | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| Ex. <i>mas.</i> habile | <i>fem.</i> habile | <i>skilful</i> |
| " riche | " riche | <i>rich</i> |

Adjectives ending in *el*, *ien*, and *et*, in order to preserve the grave sound of their *e*,† those ending in *eil*, to preserve the sound of their *l*, which is liquid, and those ending in *on*, double their last consonant, and take *e* mute.

| | | | | | |
|-----------|----------|----------------|--------|----------|---------------|
| Ex. cruel | cruelle | <i>cruel</i> | pareil | pareille | <i>equal-</i> |
| ancien | ancienne | <i>ancient</i> | bon | bonne | <i>good</i> |
| muet | muette | <i>dumb</i> | | | |

Some adjectives ending in *et*, preserve the sound of

* If some French words have been indicated in the exercises, it is because dictionaries would not have given a proper one.

(1) à. (2) libre.

(†) The *e* in the masculine, being before a consonant in the same syllable, is grave; as, *cruel*; but in the feminine, it would become mute, by the addition of *e*; as, *cru-e-le*. (See the observation in reading page 6.) The grave sound could be preserved to the *e* by means of a grave accent; but the doubling of the consonant answers the same purpose: *Cru-el-le*, *ancien-ne*, *mu-et-te*.

their *e*, by placing a grave accent over it, instead of doubling the *t*; as,

| | | |
|-----------|------------|-------------------|
| discret | discrète | <i>discreet</i> |
| indiscret | indiscrète | <i>indiscreet</i> |
| inquiet | inquiète | <i>restless</i> |
| complet | complète | <i>complete</i> |
| incomplet | incomplète | <i>incomplete</i> |
| prêt | prête | <i>ready</i> |

Adjectives ending in *er* also preserve the grave sound of their *e*, by having an accent placed over it; as, *singulier*, *singulière*, *singular*; *portier*, *portière*, *door-keeper*.

The following adjectives double their last consonant and take *e* mute, although they do not terminate in the same manner as the others before mentioned.

| | | | | | |
|--------|----------|----------------|--------|----------|----------------|
| bas | basse | <i>low</i> | gros | grosse | <i>big</i> |
| gras | grasse | <i>fat</i> | sot | sotte | <i>foolish</i> |
| las | lasse | <i>tired</i> | nul | nulle | <i>void</i> |
| épais | épaisse | <i>thick</i> | gentil | gentille | <i>gentle</i> |
| exprès | expresse | <i>express</i> | | | |

Adjectives ending in *f*, change this letter into *v*, and take *e* mute.

| | | |
|----------|--------|---------------|
| Ex. bref | brève | <i>short</i> |
| actif | active | <i>active</i> |
| neuf | neuve* | <i>new</i> |

Adjectives ending in *x*, change this letter into *s*, and take *e* mute.

| | | |
|---------|----------|----------------|
| honteux | honteuse | <i>ashamed</i> |
| jaloux | jalouse | <i>jealous</i> |

but *doux*, *sweet*, is changed into *douce*; *faux*, *false*, into *fausse*; and *roux*, *reddish*, into *rousse*.

The feminine of words ending in *eur*, whether substantives or adjectives, is formed irregularly.

Some of these words were formed from the present participle of verbs, by changing *ant* into *eur*. Thus, from *parl-ant*, talking, they formed *parl-eur*, talker, or talkative, &c. In all adjectives of this class, the *r* is changed into

(2) An explanation on the use of this adjective will be found in the next page, with the word *nouveau*.

s, and an *e* mute is added to form their feminine. Thus, if you can ascertain that a word ending in *eur*, is formed from a present participle, by simply substituting *eur* to *ant*, you can form its feminine as above.

| | | | |
|--------------------|------------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| Ex. <i>parleur</i> | (from <i>parlant</i>) | <i>parleuse</i> | <i>talkative</i> |
| <i>menteur</i> | (from <i>mentant</i>) | <i>menteuse</i> | <i>lying</i> |

The following are the only ones excepted :

| | | |
|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>enchanteur</i> | <i>enchanteresse</i> | <i>enchancing</i> |
| <i>devineur</i> | <i>devineresse</i> | <i>diviner</i> |
| <i>pécheur</i> | <i>pécheresse</i> | <i>sinner</i> |
| <i>vengeur</i> | <i>vengeresse</i> | <i>avenging</i> |
| <i>exécuteur</i> | <i>exécutrice</i> | <i>executor</i> |
| <i>inventeur</i> | <i>inventrice</i> | <i>inventor</i> |
| <i>inspecteur</i> | <i>inspectrice</i> | <i>inspector</i> |
| <i>persécuteur</i> | <i>persécutrice</i> | <i>persecutor</i> |

But whatever be the derivation of a word ending in *eur* ; if it differ from a present participle more than by its two or three last letters, the feminine will be formed by changing *eur* into *rice* ; as,

| | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| <i>admirateur</i> | <i>admiratrice</i> | <i>admirer</i> |
| <i>protecteur</i> | <i>protectrice</i> | <i>protector</i> |
| <i>ambassadeur</i> | <i>ambassadrice</i> | <i>embassador</i> |

Majeur, of age ; *meilleur*, better ; *mineur*, not of age ; *antérieur*, anterior ; and all those ending in *éreur*, conveying an idea of position, form their feminine regularly, by taking *e* mute.

The five following adjectives require particular attention.

| <i>mas. sin.</i> | <i>fem. sin.</i> | <i>mas. plu.</i> | <i>fem. plu.</i> |
|-------------------------|------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| <i>beau, bel</i> | <i>belie</i> | <i>beaux</i> | <i>belles fine</i> |
| <i>nouveau, nouvel*</i> | <i>nouvelle</i> | <i>nouveaux</i> | <i>nouvelles new</i> |

* *Neuf* and *nouveau*, both answering to the English adjective *new*, must not be indistinctly used. *Neuf* is said of things that can be worn out by wearing, or using, &c. and is never applied but to inanimate objects. It is always placed after the substantive. We say *un habit neuf*, a new coat ; *un livre neuf*, a new book, &c. *Nouveau* is applied to persons, and also to things, when it means that they are in fashion, or lately appeared or made ! We can place it either before or after the noun ; only observing to use it as it is explained in the list. We say, *un nouveau domestique*, a new servant ; *un nouvel oiseau*, a new bird ; *un air nouveau*, a new tune, &c.

| | | | | |
|--------------|---------|-------|----------|----------------|
| fou, fol | folle | fous | folles | <i>foolish</i> |
| mou, mol | molle | mous | molles | <i>soft</i> |
| vieux, vieil | vieille | vieux | vieilles | <i>old</i> |

Bel, nouvel, fol, mol, vieil, are never used, but before words in the masculine singular, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute. *Beau, nouveau, fou, mou, vieux*, are used in all other cases in the masculine singular. The feminine and plural must be expressed as written above.

The following are quite irregular :

| | | | | | |
|--------|----------|-----------------|---------|------------|------------------|
| blanc | blanche | <i>white</i> | long | longue | <i>long</i> |
| franc | franche | <i>frank</i> | favori | favorite | <i>favorite</i> |
| sec | sèche | <i>dry</i> | jumeau | jumelle | <i>twin</i> |
| frais | fraîche | <i>fresh</i> | bénin | bénigne | <i>benign</i> |
| public | publique | <i>public</i> | malin | maligne | <i>malignant</i> |
| caduc | caduque | <i>decrepit</i> | tiers | tierce | <i>third</i> |
| ture | turque | <i>turkish</i> | tors | torse | <i>twisted</i> |
| grec | grecque | <i>greek</i> | traître | traîtresse | <i>traitor</i> |

The adjectives *nu*, bare ; and *demi*, half ; remain unalterable when used before the noun, as in the following expressions : *Nu-pieds, bare footed ; nu-tête, bare headed ; demi-heure, half an hour, &c.*

Grand, great, drops the *e* in the feminine, and takes an apostrophe in some compound nouns ; as, *grand' mère, grand mother ; grand' messe, high mass ; grand' rue, grand street, &c.*

It will be beneficial to the student to commit the above exceptions to memory ; but at all events he can refer to any of the dictionaries, now in use, when he meets with those words, and he will there find the feminine of the adjectives already formed. Should, however, any of the words, ending in *eur*, be classed among the substantives, he must look for the feminine ending in *euse, rice, or eresse*, as the case may be ; the feminine of a substantive being not always put after its masculine, but according to the alphabetical order.

EXCEPTIONS TO THE GENERAL RULE RESPECTING THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF FRENCH ADJECTIVES.

Bleu, blue, makes *bleus* ; *tout, all*, makes *tous*.

According to the general rule, all adjectives ending in *al*, would form their plural by changing *al* into *aux* ; but

some of these have no masculine plural, and cannot, therefore, be connected with substantives in the masculine plural.

This peculiarity arises from their being generally applied to feminine substantives. Therefore, the learner is recommended not to use them in his conversation, except with nouns in the singular or in the feminine plural. Some of these adjectives will be put down, as it is important to notice them, viz. *glacial*, *frozen*; *immémorial*, — *instrumental*, — *jovial*, — *marital*, — *mental*, — *musical*, — *pastoral*, — *pectoral*, — *pénal*, —.

EXERCISE.

The mother is amiable, and the daughter is sensible. Peter's cravat is equal to Mary's handkerchief. Why are you so cruel, madam? She is good and credulous. Rome is an ancient city. She will be a good musician. He is the minister of a Presbyterian church. The wounds were not mortal. The baker's house is very low, and the walls are very thick. Will she not be tired? Mary is a gentle little girl. Peter's hands are large and fat. Will she be discreet? Yes; she will not be indiscreet, for (1) she is dumb. Are you not ready, madam? The army was not complete. Is she not ashamed? You are too quick, Miss. Was she not jealous? Mary had a new frock yesterday, and an old belt. She was very active and laborious, but talkative. The promise was deceitful. Armide was an enchanting beauty. She is the executrix of the queen's will. The little girl is not of age. She was inferior to the general's wife, but superior to the captain's mother. The actress is an excellent songstress. The empress is the protectress of the poor. The merchant's clerk has a handsome cravat. Had you not a new song? He has a handsome child. I was in the new apartment. They are crazy. The queen, was she not a stranger? The English music was not here, and the French music was on the table. Be frank, madam. Mary and Jenny are twins. A Turkish frigate and a Grecian fleet were in the same harbor. The intelligence (2) contained in the letter, was not public yesterday. The water is quite fresh. The war will be long and expensive. She had a malignant fever. The French tongue is very useful. He has an English grammar, and two German dictionaries. A yellow parrot is a handsome

(1) car.

(2) nouvelle.

bird, but a black cat is not a pretty animal. The ribbons were blue, but the hat is green. They are all equal. The four cardinal points are the east, west, north and south. x

OF THE POSSESSIVE AND DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

Some adjectives are used to mark the possession of things or persons; they are *mon, ton, son, &c.* my, thy, his, her, or its, &c. Some grammarians have classed these among the pronouns, because they relate to persons, but they are mere adjectives, and distinguished by the name of possessive.

Other adjectives distinguish in a precise manner the persons or things to which they are applied; they are *ce, cet, cette, ces, this, that, these*, which are called demonstrative adjectives.

OF THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

These adjectives in French agree in gender and number with the object possessed, and not with the possessor, as in English; and as the gender and number of the adjective change, according to those of the substantive, the adjective must be repeated before every noun to which it refers in the sentence, and preceded by the preposition, if there be one.

| MASC. SING. | FEM. SING. | PLURAL FOR BOTH. | |
|-------------|------------|------------------|------------------------|
| <i>mon</i> | <i>ma</i> | <i>mes</i> | <i>my</i> |
| <i>ton</i> | <i>ta</i> | <i>tes</i> | <i>thy</i> |
| <i>son</i> | <i>sa</i> | <i>ses</i> | <i>his, her or its</i> |
| notre | | <i>nos</i> | <i>our</i> |
| votre | | <i>vos</i> | <i>your</i> |
| leur | | <i>leurs</i> | <i>their</i> |

REMARK. Should the noun which any of these adjectives precedes be in the feminine singular, beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, in order that two vowels may not come together, when no elision can take place, the adjective is put in the masculine in French, for the sake of euphony; as, *mon épouse*, my wife, instead of *ma épouse*; *son humeur*, her disposition, instead of *sa humeur*; *ton intéressante histoire*, thy interesting history, instead of *ta intéressante histoire*.

EXERCISE.

My father and your brother were (1) together. Your father will speak to your uncle of your improper behaviour. His wife will speak to her brother and sister, and probably they will excuse your faults. My hat, coat, boots and waistcoat (2) are quite new; but my cravat, breast-pin, (3) watch (4) and key, are not elegant. I shall have a new dress to-morrow. His house, garden and farm are very well situated; but his rooms are dark, because his trees are high and lofty. Your cousin is my teacher. Present my compliments to your wife and daughter. Our carriage and horses are at your service. I lent yesterday my umbrella to your friends and their servant. They will be here to-night, with their children and their master. I esteem thy friendship. My friend John was here, with his amiable sister and her friend, Miss Clara. Thy boldness and intrepidity deserved his approbation, and his intention is well known; he will reward thy courage. Her hatred was the cause of her horrible vengeance. She saved her reputation and honor. Their parents will blame their actions.

OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

Demonstrative adjectives agree in gender and number, with the substantives to which they are prefixed.

| | |
|---------------|--|
| Masc. sing. | { ce (before a consonant or <i>h</i> aspirated,) } <i>This</i> |
| | { cet (before a vowel or <i>h</i> mute,) } <i>or</i> |
| Fem. sing. | cette } <i>that.</i> |
| M. & f. plur. | ces <i>These or those.</i> |

EXERCISE.

That young man is my cousin, and that lady is his sister. That child is their brother. We will eat that excellent pie, if you wish. Sing that pretty song. Those men work; they do not neglect their business. That happy mortal lives in a real paradise. This intrepid warrior stopped the march of that hero. This shepherdess lives in that hamlet. I will not pay these bills because the addition is not exact. You do not flatter these persons. They did not blame these steps. I would not live (5) in that house. We should prefer to have those palaces. These apples are the product of those trees. That general commanded these troops, and this colonel commands those soldiers. Grant that favor to this man. If you oblige that poor woman, she will preserve the remembrance of the benefit forever.

(1) Imperfect. (2) gilet. (3) épingle. (4) montre. (5) demeurer.

OF NUMBERS.

There are two kinds of numbers, the cardinal and the ordinal.

There are other sorts of numbers, which will be examined in the second part of this work.

The cardinal numbers are those which merely express a number, as *one, two, three*. The ordinal are those which express the order or rank by number, as *first, second, third*.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.

PRONUNCIATION.*

| | | At the end of a peri- od | Before a con- sonant or <i>h</i> aspirated. | Before a vow- el, or an <i>h</i> mute. |
|----|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|---|--|
| 1 | un <i>m.</i> une <i>f.</i> | un u-ne | un u-ne | eu-u.... u-n' |
| 2 | deux | deu (<i>x</i> silent) | deu (<i>x</i> silent) | deuz |
| 3 | trois | troi (<i>s</i> silent) | troi (<i>s</i> silent) | troiz |
| 4 | quatre | qua-tre | qua-tre | qua-tr' |
| 5 | cinq | cin (<i>q</i> silent) | cin (<i>q</i> silent) | cink |
| 6 | six | sis | si (<i>x</i> silent) | siz |
| 7 | sept | set (<i>p</i> silent) | sé (<i>pt</i> silent) | set |
| 8 | huit | huit (<i>h</i> aspira- ted) | hui (<i>t</i> silent) | huit |
| 9 | neuf | neuf | neu (<i>f</i> silent) | neuv |
| 10 | dix | dis | di (<i>x</i> silent) | diz |
| 11 | onze | onzet | onze | onz' |
| 12 | douze | douze | douze | douz' |
| 13 | treize | treize | treize | treiz' |
| 14 | quatorze | quatorze | quatorze | quatorz' |
| 15 | quinze | quinze | quinze | quinz' |
| 16 | seize | seize | seize | seiz' |
| 17 | dix-sept | diz-set | diz-sé | diz-set |

* The student is advised often to refer to the list of the pronunciation of these numbers, on account of the pronunciation being so irregular.

† No elision will be made on *onze*, which is always to be considered as spelt with *h* aspirated: for we say, *le onze, du onze, &c.*

PRONUNCIATION.

| | | At the end of the period or sentence. | Before a con- sonant, or <i>h</i> aspirated. | Before a vow- el, or <i>h</i> mute. |
|----|---|--|--|--|
| 18 | dix-huit | diz-huit | diz-hui | diz-huit |
| 19 | dix-neuf | diz-neuf | diz-neu | diz-neuv |
| 20 | vingt | vin (<i>gt</i> silent) | vin (<i>gt</i> silent) | vint (<i>g</i> silent) |
| 21 | vingt-et-un | { vint-é-un (the <i>t</i> of <i>et</i> silent) | { vint-é-un (the <i>t</i> of <i>et</i> silent) | { vint-é eu- n..... |
| 22 | vingt-deux | vint'deu | vint'deu | vint'deux |
| 23 | vingt-trois, &c. &c. | vint'troi | vint'troi | vint'troiz |
| 30 | trente | trente | trente | trent' |
| 31 | trente-et-un | trent'é-un | trent'é-un | { trent'é eu- n..... |
| 32 | trente-deux &c. &c. | trente-deu | trente-deu | trente-deux |
| 40 | quarante | quarante | quarante | quarant' |
| 50 | cinquante | cinquante | cinquante | cinquant' |
| 60 | soixante | soissante | soissante | soissant' |
| | { soixante- et-dix, (formerly septante) | soissant-é-di | soissant-é-di | soissant-é-diz |
| 70 | | | | |
| 71 | { soixante-et- onze | { soissant-é- onze | { soissant-é- onze | soissant-é-onz' |
| 72 | { soixante- douze* | { soixante- douze | { soixante- douze | { soissante- douz' |
| | { quatre- vingt, (sometimes vingtst) (formerly huitante) | { quatre- vin (<i>gt</i> always silent) | quatre- vin | { quatre- vin when vingt, and quatre vinz when vingts |
| 80 | | | | |
| 81 | { quatre- vingt-un | quatre- vin-un | quatre- vin-un | { quatre- vin- eu-n..... |
| 82 | { quatre- vingt- deux, &c. | { quatre- vin- deu | { quatre- vin- deu | { quatre- vin- deuz |

* And so on in adding *treize*, *quatorze*, &c. to *soixante*.

† This is explained hereafter.

PRONUNCIATION.

| | | At the end of the pe- riod or sentence. | Before a consonant, or <i>h</i> aspi- rated. | Before a vow- el, or <i>h</i> mute. |
|-----------|--|--|---|---|
| 90 | { quatre- vingt-dix, (formerly nonante) | { quatre- vin-dis | { quatre- vin-di | { quatre-vin- diz |
| 91 | { quatre- vingt-onze &c. up to | { quatre- vin-onze | { quatre- vin-onze | { quatre-vin- onz' |
| 100 | cent | { cen (<i>t</i> al- ways si- lent) | cen | { cent, before a <i>substan- tive</i> , and cen before another number, as |
| 101 | cent-un | cen-un | cen-un | cen-eu-n..... |
| 200 | { deux cent, and deux cents, &c.* | deu-cen | deu-cen | { deu-cen when cent, and deu- cenz when cents |
| 1000 | mille | mi-le | mi-le | mi-l' |
| 1001 | { mille-un, or mille-et-un | mille-un mil-é-un | not used mil-é-un | not used mil-é-eu-n... |
| 2000 | deux mille | deu-mi-le | deu-mi-le | deu-mil' |
| 10,000 | dix mille | di-mi-le | di-mi-le | di-mil' |
| 100,000 | cent mille | cen-mi-le | cen-mi-le | cen-mil' |
| 1,000,000 | un million | un milion | un milion | un milion |
| 2,000,000 | deux millions | deu milion | deu milion | deu million |

REMARK. The English conjunction *and* is never expressed in French with these numbers, except in *vingt-et-un*, *trente-et-un*, and before *un* in every tenth number up to seventy.

Ex. cinq cent trente *five hundred and thirty.*

Un is not annexed to mille or cent; as we say *cent* and *mille*, for a hundred, a thousand, and not *un cent*, *un mille*.

Cent in the plural, and *vingt* in the words *quatre vingt*, *six-vingts*, take an *s*, except when they are followed by another

* As explained hereafter.

number connected with them: *Ex. deux cents hommes*; but we write *deux cent cinquante hommes*; *quatre-vingts beaux-arbres*, and *quatre-vingt deux arbres*.

S is never added to mille.

Ex. deux mille

trois mille.

When mentioning the year in which we live, we curtail this word into *mil*; as, *mil huit cent vingt-neuf*. Some extend that practice to all years of the christian era.

It is good French to say *onze cent, douze cent, &c.* as far as *dix-neuf cent*; but after that, the words, *deux mille*, must be used to express two thousand, &c. Nor can *dix cent* be substituted for *mille*.

Million is followed by the preposition *de*, of, as in English. It takes *s* in the plural.

The numbers cannot be reversed. Five-and-twenty must be rendered in French by *vingt-cinq*, twenty-five.

OF THE ORDINAL NUMBERS.

First. { *premier masc.* } sing. (The *r* in the singular, and the
 { *première fem.* } *rs* in the plural, are silent, but the
 { *premiers masc.* } plu. final letter is carried on a vowel or
 { *premières fem.* } *h* mute)
 and *unième, masc. and fem.* when coming after a tenth; as, *vingt-et-unième*, twenty-first; and not *vingt-premier*. *Unième* is never used but in tens.

Second. { *second masc.* } sing. (The *c* is pronounced like *g*; as,
 { *seconde fem.* } *Second.* The *d* in the singular, and
 { *seconds masc.* } plu. the *rs* in the plural are silent, except
 { *secondes fem.* } the final letter, when before a vowel
 and *deuxième, masc. and* or *h* mute; then the *d* takes a little
fem. (pronoun. deuxième) the sound of *J*, or is entirely silent.)

It is used after a tenth; as, *trente-deuxième*, thirty-second; and not *trente-second*.

Deuxième can be used without being preceded by a tenth, and takes an *s* in the plural.

The following numbers are of both genders, and take an *s* when added to plural nouns.

The rest are formed by adding *ième* to the cardinal numbers. But if the cardinal number ends in *e* mute, the *e* mute must be cut off, and *ième* added to the preceding consonant. *Neuf* always makes *neuvième, dix neuvième, &c.*

The Ordinal numbers are pronounced as the cardinal are before a vowel, with the addition of *ième*.

Ex. *deuxième*, pr. *deux-ième*; *dixième*, pr. *dis-ième*; *unième*, is pronounced *u-nième*.

Third, *troisième*.

Fourth, *quatrième*.

Fifth, *cinquième*, &c.

The ordinal numbers take the article *le*, *la*, or *les*, according to the gender and number of the substantives to which they refer. Ex. *le premier homme*, *the first man*; *la seconde guerre*, *the second war*; *les troisièmes classes*, *the third classes*.

EXERCISE.

My master had twenty dollars, seven guineas, forty five-shillings, and thirty-one cents. I paid yesterday two hundred francs to my door-keeper, six hundred and fifty francs to my coachman, three hundred and eighty dollars to my landlord, and eighty-five cents to the Post Office. In the month of January of the present year, one thousand eight hundred and twenty-nine, I spent three thousand dollars, and perhaps three thousand five hundred. I gave nine hundred and seventy-five dollars to the mason, and about eight hundred to the carpenter. My young sister is always the first, and your brothers are often the last. I lent to your friend the third volume of Voltaire's works, of the twenty-first edition, and the second volume of Moliere's Comedies, thirty-second edition. The Colonel commands the thirteenth regiment of infantry, and his brother, the Lieutenant, was at the head of the sixteenth company. Add the following numbers together: eighty-six, ninety-nine, seventy-five, one hundred and eighty, twenty-one, seventeen, two thousand and eighty-six.

INTRODUCTORY REMARKS TO THE PRONOUNS AND VERBS.

Before we proceed to consider those important parts of speech, viz. pronouns and verbs, it is necessary that a subject, intimately connected with them, should be explained. This explanation could not, with propriety, have been introduced before.

Every person, who is conversant with the rules of English Grammar, must know what meaning is conveyed

by the words nominative and objective; but as there may be some who will commence the study of the French, without a previous acquaintance with the rules of their own language, an explanation of these words is here given, to enable them to understand the subject properly.

The nominative or subject of a verb, is the person or thing that *is*, *does*, or *suffers*; for the verb being a word that signifies *to be*, *to do*, or *to suffer*, must refer to a person or thing that *is*, *does* or *suffers*, and that person or thing we call nominative or subject.

It can be discovered by prefixing to the verb the interrogative pronoun *who*, for persons, and *what*, for things. Ex. *I sing*; *Peter talks*; *Iron is useful*. Who sings? who talks? what is useful? *I*, *Peter*, and *Iron*, are the successive answers to these questions; and consequently, each one of these words is nominative to the verb with which it is connected in these sentences.

The objective is that substantive which follows the verb, and which expresses the object of an action. Ex. *I see you*. *You bought a book*. *You* and *book* being the objects of the action of seeing and buying, are consequently objective, of the verbs *see* and *bought*. The shortest way to know the objective is to ask what is the thing seen or bought. Here *you* and *book* are seen and bought, and therefore are objective.

Sometimes a substantive, which is the object of the action of the verb, is connected to it by a preposition; there are then two objectives, the direct and the indirect. Both of them can come with the same verb. In the sentence, *John wrote a letter to his father*, *John* is the nominative, for he performs the action; *letter* is the objective direct, because it is the thing written; and the *father*, being the person to whom John writes, and connected to the verb by the preposition *to*, is the objective indirect.

All modern French grammarians, in speaking of the objective indirect to the verb, say, that it is generally marked by the prepositions *à* or *de*, *to* and *of*. In English, any word preceded by one of these two words, or any other preposition, would be called the objective of the preposition, and not of the verb. One of our most celebrated grammarians, Mr. *Le Tellier*, proposes exactly the same plan in French; and in order to be as near the English

grammar as possible, his opinion would have been entirely adopted in this, had it not interfered with the simplicity of its arrangement.

However, if an indirect objective is still preserved, it will be only when brought into the sentence by the preposition *to*. In such a case, the connection between that word and the verb is so close, that when the objective is a personal pronoun, both the pronoun and the preposition *to* are expressed in one word, as it will be seen in the list. Therefore, the word which follows that preposition will be called the objective, indirect to the verb; while, if it be preceded by *de*, or any other, it will be called objective to the preposition, and constantly used as such, whatever part of speech it may belong to.*

Perhaps some amateurs of the old system will consider this innovation hardly justifiable; but they will not deny that it entirely removes one of the greatest difficulties in the grammatical construction of the pronouns.

These distinctions should be thoroughly understood before the learner proceeds further.

CHAPTER IV.

OF THE PRONOUNS.

A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun, to prevent the too frequent repetition of the same word.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Personal pronouns are those which most grammarians define as occupying the place of persons, although they often stand for things.

These pronouns are either nominative or objective to the verbs. When nominative, they are *je, tu, il, elle*, with their plurals, *nous, vous, ils, elles*, the same which are used in conjugating the verbs.

* The definition, together with a list of the prepositions, will be found under the head of that part of speech.

In French, as in English, these pronouns are classed in three persons. The first person is he who speaks ; the second, the person spoken to ; and the third, the person or thing spoken of, thus :

| | SING. | FLURAL. | | |
|----------------------|-------------|---------|----------------|-----------------------------------|
| Je or j [*] | <i>I</i> | nous | <i>we</i> | are pronouns of the first person. |
| tu | <i>thou</i> | vous | <i>you</i> |second person. |
| il | <i>he</i> | ils | <i>they m.</i> | }third person. |
| elle | <i>she</i> | elles | <i>they f.</i> | |

N. B. All substantives placed before a verb, are of the third person.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS NOMINATIVE TO THE VERBS.

When the personal pronoun is nominative to the verb, it is very easy to use it ; the scholar has only to recal to his memory the manner in which they are joined to the verb, either affirmatively, as *je parle, tu parles, il parle*, or interrogatively ; as, *parlè-je ? parles-tu ? parle-t-il ?* This is the only way of placing the pronouns when in the nominative.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS WHEN OBJECTIVE TO THE VERBS.

When the personal pronoun is objective direct or indirect to the verb, it is placed *immediately* before it, and in compound tenses even before the auxiliary, and not between the auxiliary and the participle. This is observed in every tense and person, except in the first and second person of the imperative, used affirmatively. It is there placed after the verb. But observe, that when the imperative is used in the negative, that is to say, when a command is given *not* to perform an action, then the pronoun, as usual, comes before the verb.

* The *e* of *Je* is cut off before a vowel or *h* mute, except in interrogative sentences.

A LIST OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS WHEN OBJECTIVE TO THE VERB.

| ENGLISH expressed in | FRENCH. |
|----------------------|--|
| Me, and to me, | by <i>me</i> , before the verb, and <i>moi</i> , after.* |
| thee and to thee | " <i>te</i> <i>toi</i> |
| him | " <i>le</i> |
| her | " <i>la</i> |
| to him and to her | " <i>lui</i> |
| us and to us | " <i>nous</i> |
| you and to you | " <i>vous</i> |
| them | " <i>les</i> |
| to them | " <i>leur</i> |

} both before and after
the verb.

When *me*, *te*, *le*, and *la*, come before a verb beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, the final *e* and *a* are cut off, and an apostrophe is added.

The student must observe, that sometimes the preposition *to* is only understood in English, as, *I will give him my watch*, instead of *I will give to him*, &c.; but the French pronoun must be used as if *to* was expressed in English, thus: *Je lui donnerai ma montre*, and not *je le donnerai*.

EXERCISE.

My master blames me, but my friends praise me, because they like me, and they treat me very well. I love thee and I will show thee the sincerity of my love. I found him plunged in a deep sorrow, and my brother explained to me the cause of his grief. (1.) My son was sick. I sent him to the country, where I sent him his books, because there he will study his lessons, and will recite them next Saturday. Forgive me, and give me your word that you will forget our misunderstanding. The King will not grant us that favor. Since (2) my daughter is studious, I will reward her, and will show her my satisfaction. Give her this ring, leave her alone, and do not explain to her the reason, why I send her that present. Let us help him, in that unlucky accident, and let us lend him two or three hundred dollars. We will oblige him, and show him that we are his friends. I thank you, Sir. Do not thank me for that little service, but listen to me for a moment. My children had a good master. He taught (3) them for (4) several years, and gave them several excellent rules.

* This only occurs with the second person of the imperative used affirmatively.

(1) *Peine, f. s.* (2) *Puisque.* (3) *Enseigner.* (4) *Pendant.*

- It will be perceived, that the plan of this grammar is to enable the scholar to write his exercises without the help of the French words, numbers and signs, written under the English, which are as beneficial to the teacher as injurious to the pupil ; therefore, the subject of the pronouns will be resumed, when the student shall have advanced further, so as to enable him to understand with facility the remarks which will be made.

CHAPTER V.

OF THE VERBS.

A verb is a word which signifies *to be*, *to do*, or *to suffer*. Verbs must agree with their nominatives in number and person.

There are various kinds of verbs, the nature of which will be explained in another part of this work. Verbs are active, passive, neuter, pronominal, or impersonal. Besides these, there are two auxiliary verbs, so called, because by their help, the other verbs are conjugated. They are *avoir*, *to have*, and *être*, *to be*.

All verbs may be used affirmatively, negatively, interrogatively, and interro-negatively.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *Avoir*, TO HAVE.

INFINITIVE.*

SIMPLE TENSES.

COMPOUND TENSES.

| PRESENT. | | PAST. | |
|--------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| <i>avoir</i> | <i>to have</i> | <i>avoir eu</i> | <i>to have had</i> |

PARTICIPLES.

| PRESENT. | | COMPOUND. | |
|---|---------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| <i>ayant</i> | <i>having</i> | } <i>ayant eu</i> | <i>having had</i> |
| <i>eu</i> (1) <i>m. eue f.</i> (2) <i>had</i> | PAST | | |

* The general rules on pronunciation will be recollected.

(1) (2) *Eu* are pronounced as the French letter *u*, throughout the verb.

SIMPLE TENSES.

COMPOUND TENSES.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

PRÆTERIT INDEFINITE, OR COMPOUND OF

THE PRESENT.

| | | | | | |
|---------------|---------------------|------------|------|------------------|-------|
| j'ai | <i>I have</i> | j'ai | } eu | <i>I have</i> | } had |
| tu as* | <i>thou hast</i> | tu as | | <i>thou hast</i> | |
| il a | <i>he has</i> | il a | | <i>he has</i> | |
| elle a | <i>she has</i> | elle a | | <i>she has</i> | |
| nous avons | <i>we have</i> | nous avons | | <i>we have</i> | |
| vous avez (1) | <i>you have</i> | vous avez | | <i>you have</i> | |
| ils ont | <i>they m. have</i> | ils ont | } | <i>they have</i> | } |
| elles ont | <i>they f. have</i> | elles ont | | <i>they have</i> | |

PLUPERFECT, OR COMPOUND OF THE

IMPERFECT.

IMPERFECT.

| | | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|-------------|------|-------------------|-------|
| j'avais (2) | <i>I had, or did have</i> | j'avais | } eu | <i>I had</i> | } had |
| tu avais | <i>thou hadst, or didst have</i> | tu avais | | <i>thou hadst</i> | |
| il avait | <i>he had or did have</i> | il avait | | <i>he had</i> | |
| nous avions | <i>we had or did have</i> | nous avions | | <i>we had</i> | |
| vous aviez | <i>you had or did have</i> | vous aviez | | <i>you had</i> | |
| ils avaient (3) | <i>they had, or did have</i> | ils avaient | | <i>they had</i> | |

* The second person singular of the French verbs is very often used; and not only in the same instances as in English, but yet between persons of a same family, intimate friends, young children. Some people use it with their servants, &c. That person generally ends in *s* in all the tenses.

(1) *Elle* and *elles* need not be repeated before the other tenses of the verb, but will be used for *she* and *they* in the feminine.

(1) The second person plural is generally marked by *es*, and the *e* is sounded acute; as, *vous avés*.

(2) Formerly spelt *j'avois, tu avois, il avoit, ils avoient*. The *oi* or *ai* are pronounced as spelt with a grave *è*; as, *javè, &c.*

(3) *nt* in the third person plural of a verb, are always silent, when preceded by *e* mute.

SIMPLE TENSES.

COMPOUND TENSES.

PRÆTERIT ANTERIOR, or COMPOUND

PRÆTERIT DEFINITE.

OF THE PRÆTERIT

| | | | | | |
|----------------|-------------------|------------|------|-------------------|-------|
| j'eus | <i>I had</i> | j'eus | } eu | <i>I had</i> | } had |
| tu eus | <i>thou hadst</i> | tu eus | | <i>thou hadst</i> | |
| il eut | <i>he had</i> | il eut | | <i>he had</i> | |
| nous eûmes | <i>we had</i> | nous eûmes | | <i>we had</i> | |
| vous eûtes (1) | <i>you had</i> | vous eûtes | | <i>you had</i> | |
| ils eurent | <i>they had</i> | ils eurent | | <i>they had</i> | |

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

| | | | | | |
|-------------|---|-------------|------|------------------------------|-------|
| j'aurai (2) | <i>I shall, or will have (throughout)</i> | j'aurai | } eu | <i>I shall, or will have</i> | } had |
| tu auras | <i>thou shalt have</i> | tu auras | | <i>thou shalt have</i> | |
| il aura | <i>he shall have</i> | il aura | | <i>he shall have</i> | |
| nous aurons | <i>we shall have</i> | nous aurons | | <i>we shall have</i> | |
| vous aurez | <i>you shall have</i> | vous aurez | | <i>you shall have</i> | |
| ils auront | <i>they shall have</i> | ils auront | | <i>they shall have</i> | |

CONDITIONAL.

PAST, or COMPOUND OF THE CON-

DITIONAL.

| | | | | | |
|--------------|---------------------------------------|--------------|------|----------------------------|-------|
| j'aurais (3) | <i>I should, could, or would have</i> | j'aurais | } eu | <i>I should have</i> | } had |
| tu aurais | <i>thou should'st have</i> | tu aurais | | <i>thou should'st have</i> | |
| il aurait | <i>he should have</i> | il aurait | | <i>he should have</i> | |
| nous aurions | <i>we should have</i> | nous aurions | | <i>we should have</i> | |
| vous auriez | <i>you should have</i> | vous auriez | | <i>you should have</i> | |
| ils auraient | <i>they should have</i> | ils auraient | | <i>they should have</i> | |

(1) Whenever the second person of the plural is marked with an *s*, that letter and the preceding *e*, form a mute syllable, and the *es* are no more sounded than a mute *e*.

(2) *Ai* is in that person sounded like *é*.

(3) *Ai*, formerly *oi*, throughout that tense, are sounded like *é*.

SIMPLE TENSES.

COMPOUND TENSES.

N. B. { *J'eusse eu, tu eusses eu, il eût eu, nous eussions eu, vous eussiez eu, ils eussent eu, I should have had, &c. is also used for the conditional past.**

IMPERATIVE.

| | |
|--------------|----------------------|
| Aie | <i>Have (thou)</i> |
| Qu'il ait | <i>Let him have</i> |
| Ayons | <i>Let us have</i> |
| Ayez | <i>Have (ye)</i> |
| Qu'ils aient | <i>Let them have</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE.†

PRESENT.

PRETERIT, or COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT.

| | | | | | |
|----------------|-------------------------|------------|--------|-------------------------|-------|
| que j'aie | <i>That I may have</i> | que j'aie | } eu { | <i>That I may have</i> | } had |
| que tu aies | <i>thou may'st have</i> | tu aies | | <i>thou may'st have</i> | |
| qu' il ait | <i>he may have</i> | il ait | | <i>he may have</i> | |
| que nous ayons | <i>we may have</i> | nous ayons | | <i>we may have</i> | |
| que vous ayez | <i>you may have</i> | vous ayez | | <i>you may have</i> | |
| qu' ils aient | <i>they may have</i> | ils aient | | <i>they may have</i> | |

IMPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT, or COMPOUND OF THE IMPERFECT.

| | | | | | |
|---------------|---------------------------|-------------|--------|---------------------------|-------|
| que j'eusse | <i>That I might have</i> | que j'eusse | } eu { | <i>That I might have</i> | } had |
| que tu eusses | <i>thou might'st have</i> | tu eusses | | <i>thou might'st have</i> | |
| qu' il eût | <i>he might have</i> | il eût | | <i>he might have</i> | |

* This last conditional past, must not be used until it is spoken of.

† Although the subjunctive has been represented by English words, the student will know that this mood is only used in certain circumstances which will require a peculiar explanation : therefore, it will not be used in any of the exercises now, but the learner should, nevertheless, commit it to memory.

| SIMPLE TENSES. | | COMPOUND TENSES. | |
|----------------|-----------------|------------------|---|
| que nous eus- | we might have | nous eus- | } eu } we might have you might have they might have |
| sions | | sions | |
| que vous eus- | you might have | vous eus- | |
| siez | | siez | } had |
| qu'ils eussent | they might have | ils eus- | |
| | | sent | |

AVOIR is also an active verb, which implies possession. It is at first used as an active in the exercises.

THE VERB *Avoir*, NEGATIVELY.

We form our negative verbs in French, by means of two negatives, *ne* and *pas*. The latter of these two, ought to be considered not as a second negation, but as a part of the first one, used only for the purpose of strengthening the negation *ne*.

The word *ne* is always placed before, and *pas* after the verb.

Ne loses the *e* before a vowel or *h* mute. In compound tenses *pas* is placed before the participle, and occupies the same situation in a negative sentence in French, that the word *not* does in an English phrase, that expresses a negation.

In the present of the infinitive, both *ne* and *pas* are generally placed before the verb, but the present and compound participles require that *ne* should be placed before, and *pas* after them.

As the past participle cannot be used negatively, except in compound tenses, it will be omitted in the infinitive mood.

THE VERB *Avoir*, USED NEGATIVELY.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

PAST.

ne pas avoir not to have n'avoir pas eu not to have had

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

n'ayant pas not having n'ayant pas eu not having had

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Je n'ai pas *I have not*
 tu n'as pas *thou hast not*
 il n'a pas *he has not*
 nous n'avons pas *we have not*
 vous n'avez pas *you have not*

PRÉTERIT.

je n'ai pas eu *I have not had*
 tu n'as pas eu *thou hast not had*
 il n'a pas eu *he has not had*
 nous n'avons pas eu *we have not had*
 vous n'avez pas eu *you have not had*
 ils n'ont pas eu *they have not had*

It is needless to carry on this verb any farther: It is conjugated precisely like *avoir*, with the exception of having the negatives added.

THE VERB *Avoir*, USED INTERROGATIVELY.

The verb *Avoir*, when interrogative, is used just like the English verb *to have*, when a question is asked with it. The nominative pronoun is placed after the verb. This pronoun must be connected to the verb by a hyphen; as, *ai-je*. *Je*, is there pronounced like a mute syllable, and always retains the *e*, even before a vowel.

In the third person singular, should the verb, which immediately precedes *il* and *elle*, end in a vowel, the letter *t* preceded and followed by a hyphen, must be placed between the pronoun and the verb, to prevent the meeting of two vowels; as, *a-t-il*; *aura-t-elle*.

A question cannot be asked in the *infinitive*, *imperative*, or *subjunctive* moods; therefore, an interrogative verb does not possess those moods. The learner must not consider *may I*, or *may he*, as being in the subjunctive mood, in French. (See the note, page 45.)

THE VERB *Avoir*, INTERROGATIVELY.

INDICATIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

COMPOUND TENSES.

PRESENT.

ai-je? *have I?*
 as-tu? *hast thou?*
 a-t-il? *has he?*
 a-t-elle? *has she?*
 &c. &c.

PRÉTERIT INDEFINITE.

ai-je eu? *have I had?*
 as-tu eu? *hast thou had?*
 a-t-il eu? *has he had?*
 a-t-elle eu? *has she had?*
 &c. &c.

THE VERB *Avoir*, INTERROGATIVELY AND NEGATIVELY.

To express a verb in the interrogative way, with a negative, *ne* is placed before the interrogative verb, and *pas*, after the pronoun which immediately follows the verb.

The same rules which apply to verbs, interrogatively used, apply also to verbs when used in the following manner.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

| | | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|------------------|---------------------------|
| n'ai-je pas? | <i>have I not?</i> | n'ai-je-pas eu? | <i>have I not had?</i> |
| n'as-tu pas? | <i>hast thou not?</i> | n'as-tu pas eu? | <i>hast thou not had?</i> |
| n'a-t-il pas? | <i>has he not?</i> | n'a-t-il pas eu? | <i>has he not had?</i> |
| &c. &c. | | | &c. &c. |

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

OF THE VERB *Etre*, TO BE.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

| | | | |
|-------------|--------------|------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Etre</i> | <i>to be</i> | <i>Avoir été</i> | <i>to have been</i> |
|-------------|--------------|------------------|---------------------|

PAST.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

| | |
|--------------|--------------|
| <i>Etant</i> | <i>being</i> |
|--------------|--------------|

PAST.

| | |
|------------|-------------|
| <i>été</i> | <i>been</i> |
|------------|-------------|

COMPOUND.

| | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| <i>ayant été</i> | <i>having been</i> |
|------------------|--------------------|

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

| | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| <i>je suis</i> | <i>I am</i> |
| <i>tu es</i> | <i>thou art</i> |
| <i>il est</i> | <i>he is</i> |
| <i>elle est</i> | <i>she is</i> |
| <i>nous sommes</i> | <i>we are</i> |
| <i>vous êtes</i> | <i>you are</i> |
| <i>ils sont</i> | <i>they m. are</i> |
| <i>elles sont</i> | <i>they f. are</i> |

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

| | | |
|-------------------|------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>j'ai</i> | <i>I have</i> | } <i>été</i> { <i>been</i> |
| <i>tu as</i> | <i>thou hast</i> | |
| <i>il a</i> | <i>he has</i> | |
| <i>elle a</i> | <i>she has</i> | |
| <i>nous avons</i> | <i>we have</i> | |
| <i>vous avez</i> | <i>you have</i> | |
| <i>ils ont</i> | <i>they have</i> | |
| <i>elles ont</i> | <i>they have</i> | |

IMPERFECT.

| | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| <i>j'étais</i> | <i>I was</i> |
| <i>tu étais</i> | <i>thou wast</i> |
| <i>il était</i> | <i>he was</i> |
| <i>nous étions</i> | <i>we were</i> |
| <i>vous étiez</i> | <i>you were</i> |
| <i>ils étaient</i> | <i>they were</i> |

PLUPERFECT.

| | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>j'avais</i> | <i>I had</i> | } <i>été</i> { <i>been</i> |
| <i>tu avais</i> | <i>thou hadst</i> | |
| <i>il avait</i> | <i>he had</i> | |
| <i>nous avions</i> | <i>we had</i> | |
| <i>vous aviez</i> | <i>you had</i> | |
| <i>ils avaient</i> | <i>they had</i> | |

SIMPLE TENSES.

COMPOUND TENSES.

PRÆTERIT DEFINITE.

PRÆTERIT ANTERIOR.

| | | | | | |
|------------|------------------|------------|-------|-------------------|--------|
| je fus | <i>I was</i> | j'eus | } été | <i>I had</i> | } been |
| tu fus | <i>thou wast</i> | tu eus | | <i>thou hadst</i> | |
| il fut | <i>he was</i> | il eut | | <i>he had</i> | |
| nous fûmes | <i>we were</i> | nous eûmes | | <i>we had</i> | |
| vous fûtes | <i>you were</i> | vous eûtes | | <i>you had</i> | |
| ils furent | <i>they were</i> | ils eurent | | <i>they had</i> | |

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

| | | | | | |
|-------------|------------------------|-------------|-------|----------------------|--------|
| je serai | <i>I shall or will</i> | j'aurai | } été | <i>I shall or</i> | } been |
| | <i>be</i> | | | <i>will have</i> | |
| tu seras | <i>thou shalt be</i> | tu auras | | <i>thou shalt</i> | |
| | | | | <i>have</i> | |
| il sera | <i>he shall be</i> | il aura | | <i>he shall have</i> | |
| nous serons | <i>we shall be</i> | nous aurons | | <i>we shall</i> | |
| | | | | <i>have</i> | |
| vous serez | <i>you shall be</i> | vous aurez | | <i>you shall</i> | |
| | | | | <i>have</i> | |
| ils seront | <i>they shall be</i> | ils auront | | <i>they shall</i> | |
| | | | | <i>have</i> | |

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

PAST.

| | | | | | |
|--------------|------------------------|--------------|-------|----------------------|--------|
| je serais | <i>I should, would</i> | j'aurais | } été | <i>I should</i> | } been |
| | <i>or could be</i> | | | <i>have</i> | |
| tu serais | <i>thou shouldst</i> | tu aurais | | <i>thou shouldst</i> | |
| | <i>be</i> | | | <i>have</i> | |
| il serait | <i>he should be</i> | il aurait | | <i>he should</i> | |
| nous serions | <i>we should be</i> | nous aurions | | <i>we should</i> | |
| | | | | <i>have</i> | |
| vous seriez | <i>you should be</i> | vous auriez | | <i>you should</i> | |
| | | | | <i>have</i> | |
| ils seraient | <i>they should be</i> | ils auraient | | <i>they should</i> | |
| | | | | <i>have</i> | |

IMPERATIVE.

Sois
Qu'il soit
Soyons
Soyez
Qu'ils soient

Be (thou)
Let him be
Let us be
Be (ye)
Let them be

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

COMPOUND TENSES.

PRESENT.

| | | |
|-----------------|------------------|------------|
| que je sois | that I may be | que j'aie |
| que tu sois | that thou may'st | tu aies |
| | be | |
| qu'il soit | that he may be | il ait |
| que nous soyons | that we may be | nous ayons |
| que vous soyez | that you may be | vous ayez |
| qu'ils soient | that they may be | ils aient |

PRETERIT.

| | | |
|-----|-------------|--|
| | that I may | |
| | thou may'st | |
| | | |
| été | he may | |
| | we may | |
| | you may | |
| | they may | |

have been

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---------------|--------------------|--------------|
| que je fusse | that I might | que j'eusse |
| | be | |
| que tu fusses | that thou might'st | tu eusses |
| | might'st be | |
| qu'il fût | that he might | il eût |
| | be | |
| que nous fus- | that we might | nous eus- |
| sions | be | sions |
| que vous | that you | vous eussiez |
| fussiez | might be | |
| qu'ils fus- | that they | ils eussent |
| sent | might be | |

PLUPERFECT.

| | | |
|-----|---------------|--|
| | that I might | |
| | thou might'st | |
| | | |
| été | he might | |
| | we might | |
| | you might | |
| | they might | |

have been

This verb is formed interrogatively and negatively in the same way as avoir.

THE VERB *Etre*, NEGATIVELY.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

| | | |
|-------------|-----------|-----------------|
| ne pas être | not to be | n'avoir pas été |
|-------------|-----------|-----------------|

PAST.

not to have been

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

| | | |
|-------------|-----------|-----------------|
| n'étant pas | not being | n'ayant pas été |
|-------------|-----------|-----------------|

COMPOUND.

not having been

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

| | |
|----------------|--------------|
| Je ne suis pas | I am not |
| tu n'es pas | thou art not |

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

| | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| je n'ai pas été | I have not been |
| tu n'as pas été | thou hast not been |
| il n'est pas | he is not |
| éc. &c. | éc. &c. |

THE VERB *Etre*, INTERROGATIVELY.

INDICATIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

COMPOUND TENSES.

| PRESENT. | | PRETERITE INDEFINITE. | |
|-----------|-------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| suis-je ? | <i>am I ?</i> | ai-je été ? | <i>have I been ?</i> |
| es-tu ? | <i>art thou ?</i> | as-tu été ? | <i>hasst thou been ?</i> |
| est-il ? | <i>is he ?</i> | a-t-il été ? | <i>has he been ?</i> |
| &c. &c. | | &c. &c. | |

INTERROGATIVELY AND NEGATIVELY.

ne suis-je pas ? *am I not ?* n'ai-je pas été ? *have I not been ?*

REMARK. The remarks on the verb *to have*, referring to its pronunciation and the ancient orthography, must also be applied to the verb *to be*.

The verb *to be* may be either an auxiliary or a neuter verb. It is principally used as a neuter verb in the first exercises.

The verb *être*, to be, requires that the past participle used after it, should agree in gender and number with the nominative to the verb, as if that participle were an adjective. A list of those verbs which form their compound tenses by the addition of the verb *être*, together with a longer explanation, will be given hereafter.

OF THE CONJUGATIONS.

In French, the infinitive mood, present tense, of the verbs, has but four terminations ; the first is in *er*, the second is in *ir*, the third is in *oir*, and the fourth in *re*. These are called the 1st, 2d, 3d, and 4th conjugations ; an example of each will be given.

OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

The most important of all the conjugations, is that of which the infinitive terminates in *er* ; for more than four fifths, (about 4000) of our verbs, are of the same termination. As soon as the learner has become familiar with this conjugation, he will be made acquainted with the others in rotation.

In English, the action which is expressed by a verb may be rendered in two, and sometimes three, different ways. The first merely expresses the action, either *present*, *past*,

or *future*, without fixing particularly the time of it ; as, *I speak, I spoke, I will speak, &c.* The second expresses an action that *is, was, or will be present* at some particular time ; as, *I am speaking, I was speaking, I will be speaking, &c.* and the third conveys the idea of an emphatic affirmation ; as, *I do speak, I did speak, do speak, &c.* There is in French but one way to render these three different expressions. It is given in the following conjugation, with the corresponding English, as above. The learner will remember, as an important rule, that we have no French verb to answer for the English verb *to do*, as an *auxiliary*, and that we never can use the verb *to be*, followed by a *present participle*.

A plan which I have found efficacious with my pupils, has been, to expose the three English modes of expression, after the French ; but, in order not to confuse the mind of the learner, he will only commit to memory the first column of the English, that he will recite immediately after the French. It will be sufficient that he should recollect what has been said on this subject.

FIRST CONJUGATION IN *er*.

INFINITIVE.

| | | | |
|----------|--------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| PRESENT. | parl-er (1) | <i>to speak</i> | <i>to be speaking</i> |
| PAST. | avoir parl-é | <i>to have spoken</i> | <i>to have been speaking</i> |

PARTICIPLES.

| | | |
|-----------|--------------|---|
| PRESENT. | parl-ant | <i>speaking</i> |
| PAST. | parl-é | <i>spoken</i> |
| COMPOUND. | ayant parl-é | <i>having spoken having been speaking</i> |

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

| | | | | | | |
|----------------|----------------|----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| Simple tenses. | Je parl-e | <i>I speak</i> | <i>I am</i> | } <i>speaking.</i> | <i>I do</i> | } <i>speak.</i> |
| | tu parl-es | <i>thou speakest</i> | <i>thou art</i> | | <i>thou doest</i> | |
| | il parl-e | <i>he speaks</i> | <i>he is</i> | | <i>he does</i> | |
| | elle parl-e | <i>she speaks</i> | <i>she is</i> | | <i>she does</i> | |
| | nous parl-ons | <i>we speak</i> | <i>we are</i> | | <i>we do</i> | |
| | vous parl-ez | <i>you speak</i> | <i>you are</i> | | <i>you do</i> | |
| | ils parl-ent | <i>they m. speak</i> | <i>they m. are</i> | | <i>they m. do</i> | |
| | elles parl-ent | <i>they f. speak</i> | <i>they f. are</i> | | <i>they f. do</i> | |

* Pronounced *parlé*.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

| | | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|--------------|---------|-------------------|-----------|
| Compound tense. | J'ai parl-é | I have | spoken. | I have been | speaking. |
| | tu as parl-é | thou hast | | thou hast been | |
| | il a parl-é | he has | | he has been | |
| | elle a parl-é | she has | | she has been | |
| | nous avons parl-é | we have | | we have been | |
| | vous avez parl-é | you have | | you have been | |
| | ils ont parl-é | they m. have | | they m. have been | |
| | (elles ont parl-é | they f. have | | they f. have been | |

IMPERFECT.

| | | | | | |
|---------------|----------------|-----------|-------------|------------|-------------|
| Simple tense. | Je parl-ais | I was | I spoke | I did | I used to |
| | | speaking | | speaking | speaking |
| | tu parl-ais | thou wast | thou spoked | thou didst | thou usedst |
| | | speaking | | speaking | speaking |
| | il parl-ait | he was | he spoke | he did | he used to |
| | | speaking | | speaking | speaking |
| | nous parl-ions | we were | we spoke | we did | we used to |
| | | speaking | | speaking | speaking |
| | vous parl-iez | you were | you spoke | you did | you used |
| | | speaking | | speaking | speaking |
| | ils parl-aient | they were | they spoke | they did | they used |
| | | speaking | | speaking | speaking |

PLUPERFECT.

| | | | | |
|--------------|--------------------|-------------------|-----------|-----------------|
| Comp. tense. | J'avais parl-é | I had spoken | speaking. | I had been |
| | tu avais parl-é | thou hadst spoken | | thou hadst been |
| | il avait parl-é | he had spoken | | he had been |
| | nous avions parl-é | we had spoken | | we had been |
| | vous aviez parl-é | you had spoken | | you had been |
| | ils avaient parl-é | they had spoken | | they had been |

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

| | | | |
|--------------|----------------|-------------|------------------|
| Simp. tense. | Je parl-ai (1) | I spoke | I did speak |
| | tu parl-as | thou spoked | thou didst speak |
| | il parl-a | he spoke | he did speak |
| | nous parl-âmes | we spoke | we did speak |
| | vous parl-âtes | you spoke | you did speak |
| | ils parl-èrent | they spoke | they did speak |

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

| | | | | |
|-------------|-------------------|-------------------|-----------|-----------------|
| Com. tense. | J'eus parl-é | I had spoken | speaking. | I had been |
| | tu eus parl-é | thou hadst spoken | | thou hadst been |
| | il eut parl-é | he had spoken | | he had been |
| | nous eûmes parl-é | we had spoken | | we had been |
| | vous eûtes parl-é | you had spoken | | you had been |
| | ils eurent parl-é | they had spoken | | they had been |

(1) *Ai* has the sound of *è*.

FUTURE.

| | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|----------------------------------|--|
| Simple tense. | Je parl-erai | <i>I shall, or will speak</i> | <i>I shall, or will be speaking</i> |
| | tu parl-eras | <i>thou shalt, or will speak</i> | <i>thou shalt, or will be speaking</i> |
| | il parl-era | <i>he shall, or will speak</i> | <i>he shall, or will be speaking</i> |
| | nous parl-erons | <i>we shall, or will speak</i> | <i>we shall, or will be speaking</i> |
| | vous parl-erez | <i>you shall, or will speak</i> | <i>you shall, or will be speaking</i> |
| | ils parl-eront | <i>they shall, or will speak</i> | <i>they shall, or will be speaking</i> |

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

| | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|--|---|
| Compound tense. | J'aurai parl-é | <i>I shall, or will have spoken</i> | <i>I shall, or will have been speaking</i> |
| | tu auras parl-é | <i>thou shalt, or will have spoken</i> | <i>thou shalt, or will have been speaking</i> |
| | il aura parl-é | <i>he shall, or will have spoken</i> | <i>he shall, or will have been speaking</i> |
| | nous aurons parl-é | <i>we shall, or will have spoken</i> | <i>we shall, or will have been speaking</i> |
| | vous aurez parl-é | <i>you shall, or will have spoken</i> | <i>you shall, or will have been speaking</i> |
| | ils auront parl-é | <i>they shall, or will have spoken</i> | <i>they shall, or will have been speaking</i> |

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

| | | | |
|---------------|------------------|---|---|
| Simple tense. | Je parl-erais | <i>I should, would, or could speak</i> | <i>I should, would, or could be speaking</i> |
| | tu parl-erais | <i>thou shouldst, wouldst, or couldst speak</i> | <i>thou shouldst, wouldst, or couldst be speaking</i> |
| | il parl-erait | <i>he should, would, or could speak</i> | <i>he should, would, or could be speaking</i> |
| | nous parl-erions | <i>we should, would, or could speak</i> | <i>we should, would, or could be speaking</i> |
| | vous parl-eriez | <i>you should, would, or could speak</i> | <i>you should, would, or could be speaking</i> |
| | ils parl-eraient | <i>they should, would, or could speak</i> | <i>they should, would, or could be speaking</i> |

| FAST. | | |
|-----------------|--------------|----------------------------|
| Compound tense. | J'aurais | <i>I should, would,</i> |
| | parl-é | <i>or could</i> |
| | tu aurais | <i>thou shouldst.</i> |
| | parl-é | <i>wouldst, or couldst</i> |
| | il aurait | <i>he should, would,</i> |
| | parl-é | <i>or could</i> |
| | nous aurions | <i>we should, would,</i> |
| | parl-é | <i>or could</i> |
| | vous auriez | <i>you should, would,</i> |
| | parl-é | <i>or could</i> |
| | ils auraient | <i>they should, would,</i> |
| | parl-é | <i>or could</i> |

have spoken.

have been speaking.

IMPERATIVE.

| | | | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|------------|----------------|---|------------------|--|
| Parl-e | <i>speak (thou)</i> | do (thou) | be (thou | } | <i>speaking.</i> | |
| qu'il parl-e | <i>let him speak</i> | speak | let him be | | | |
| qu'elle parl-e | <i>let her speak</i> | | let her be | | | |
| parl-ons | <i>let us speak</i> | | let us be | | | |
| parl-es | <i>speak (you or ye)</i> | do (you or | be (you or ye) | | | |
| | | ye) speak | | | | |
| qu'ils parl-ent | <i>let them m. speak</i> | | let them m. be | | | |
| qu'elles parl-ent | <i>let them f. speak</i> | | let them f. be | | | |

SUBJUNCTIVE.

| PRESENT. | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| Simple tense. | que je parl-e | <i>that I may</i> |
| | que tu parl-es | <i>that thou mayest</i> |
| | qu'il parl-e | <i>that he may</i> |
| | qu'elle parl-e | <i>that she may</i> |
| | que nous parl-ions | <i>that we may</i> |
| | que vous parl-iez | <i>that you may</i> |
| | qu'ils parl-ent | <i>that they m. may</i> |
| Compound tense. | qu'elles parl-ent | <i>that they f. may</i> |
| | que j'aie parl-é | <i>that I may</i> |
| | que tu aies parl-é | <i>that thou mayest</i> |
| | qu'il ait parl-é | <i>that he may</i> |
| | qu'elle ait parl-é | <i>that she may</i> |
| | que nous ayons parl-é | <i>that we may</i> |
| | que vous ayez parl-é | <i>that you may</i> |
| | qu'ils aient parl-é | <i>that they m. may</i> |
| | qu'elles aient parl-é | <i>that they f. may</i> |

PRETERIT.

spoken.

be speaking.

have spoken.

have been speaking.

| IMPERFECT. | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Simple tense. | que je parl-asse | that I might | that I might |
| | que tu parl-asses | that thou might'st | that thou might'st |
| | qu'il parl-ât | that he might | that he might |
| | que nous parl-assions | that we might | that we might |
| | que vous parl-assiez | that you might | that you might |
| | qu'ils parl-assent | that they might | that they might |
| PLUPERFECT. | | | |
| Compound tense. | que j'eusse parl-é | that I might | that I might |
| | que tu eusses parl-é | that thou might'st | that thou might'st |
| | qu'il eût parl-é | that he might | that he might |
| | que nous eussions parl-é | that we might | that we might |
| | que vous eussiez parl-é | that you might | that you might |
| | qu'ils eussent parl-é | that they might | that they might |

As all verbs ending in *er* have the same inflexions and terminations as **PARLER**, it is an easy matter to conjugate them. It will be observed that the root of the verb (the part which is never altered in the different inflexions) has been separated by a hyphen from the *addition* (the part which changes according to the different moods and tenses. *) In all verbs of this conjugation, the *addition* of the infinitive mood, present tense, is invariably *er*.

Some of the verbs are spelt in such a manner, that the letters of the root, meeting with those of the *addition*, would produce a sound different from that in the verb. In those ending in *cer* and *ger*, the letters *c* and *g* are soft,

* French grammarians make a distinction between the words *inflection* and *termination* of verbs, according to which, neither of these words can be properly employed to mean the whole part of the verb which comes after the root. But in treating of the conjugations and of the formation of the tenses, the same authors distinguish the root of the verb, and the part *which is added* to it. Then if a thing which is added and an addition are synonymous, the term *addition* will be found sufficiently convenient.

not only in the infinitive, but also in all the tenses of the verb. Now it will be observed that either of these letters, *c* or *g*, placed before the hyphen, will, in some circumstances, be followed by *a* or *o*.

Therefore, in order to preserve the soft sound to *c* and *g*, in verbs ending in *cer*, a cedilla must be placed under the *c*, when it precedes *a* or *o*; and in verbs ending in *ger*, the *g* not receiving a cedilla, an *e* mute is placed between *g* and *a*, or *o*. Ex.: *nous forçons nous mangeons*.

The learner will conjugate, according to the rules that have now been given, the verbs *forcer*, to force, and *manger*, to eat.

In verbs ending in *ayer*, *oyer* and *uyer*, the sound of two *i*'s represented by *y*, would be hard in those inflections of the verb in which it is followed by a mute *e*. Thus, *J'emploie*, I employ, would be pronounced *J'emploi-i-e*. (See page 6, on *y*.) For the sake of Euphony, one of the *i*'s is taken off by changing the *y* into *i*, whenever a mute *e* follows it immediately; as, *J'emploie*, &c.

The learner will write on this rule *payer*, to pay, *appuyer*, to support, and *employer*, to employ.

In some verbs, the penultimate syllable of the infinitive ends in *e* mute; as, *ache-ter*, to buy, *rame-ner*, to lead back. Now, when you join the addition to the roots of these verbs, which are *achet*—and *men*—if the first letter of that addition be a mute *e*, two syllables ending in *e* mute will come in succession; as, *ja-che-te*, *je-me-ne*, which is contrary to the rules of the language.* In that case, the first *e* must be grave. This practice is also extended to the future and conditional, although the two *e*'s be at the beginning of the word.

It would be advisable that a uniform method of altering the sound of this *e*, when required, should be adopted. But those verbs which end in *eler* or *eter*, according to custom, make their first *e* grave, by doubling the *l* or *t*. In all other terminations, a grave accent is used for that purpose. Ex. *j'appelle*, *j'achette*, *je méne*, &c.

Write on this rule *appeler*, to call, *acheter*, to buy, *mener*, to lead.

If the penultimate syllable end in *e* with an acute accent,

* See page 7, on Euphony.

that accent must be changed into a grave one, in the same instances. Ex. *céler*, to conceal; *révéler*, to reveal. Ex. *je cèle tu révéles*.

It is useless to give exercises on these rules, as it will be sufficient for the pupil to write carefully a number of these verbs. He will find in his exercises verbs on all these difficulties. All those that require an explanation, will be found in the second part of this grammar.

OF THE NEGATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE VERBS.

All negative and interrogative verbs in French are formed as already described in *avoir* and *être*, viz. the negative by *ne* and *pas*, and the interrogative by reversing the nominative pronoun. The necessity of this arrangement is explained by the remark prefixed to the verb *parler*. It only remains to give examples of the relation between the French and English verb.

Observe, that in compound tenses, the auxiliary, alone, is put in the negative or interrogative, as in the preceding verbs *avoir* and *être*, and that the past participle is always used last.

NEGATIVE VERBS.

REMARK. There are two verbs of the conjugation in *er*, which are irregular, viz. *aller*, to go, and *envoyer*, to send;* and as a verb expressing a negation, is here to be conjugated throughout, it has been thought advisable to choose one of these (*aller*, to go) for that purpose, so that the learner will have an opportunity to get acquainted with them. (*Envoyer* will be conjugated interrogatively.)

In conjugating the verb *aller*, it will be perceived that in the formation of its compound tenses, the verb *être*, to be, and not *avoir*, to have, is used; and this will be an appropriate place to put in practice the third remark on the verb *to be*, page 51.

* Some persons may say, that there are more irregular verbs, viz. *puer*, to emit an offensive smell; and *tisser*, to weave; but the first (besides its being banished from polite conversation) is now used only in its regular tenses; and the only irregularity existing in *tisser*, is in the formation of its past participle *tissu*, which is borrowed from *tistre*.

VERB *Aller*, TO GO, NEGATIVELY.

INFINITIVE.

| | | | |
|-------|-----------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| PRES. | Ne pas aller | <i>not to go</i> | <i>not to be going</i> |
| PAST. | n'être pas allé | <i>not to have gone</i> | <i>not to have been going</i> |

PARTICIPLES.

| | | | |
|-------|------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| PRES. | n'allant pas | <i>not going</i> | |
| PAST. | allé | <i>gone</i> | |
| COM. | n'étant pas allé | <i>not to have gone</i> | <i>not to have been going</i> |

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

| | | | | | |
|---------------|-------------------|-------------------|----------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| Simple tense. | Je ne vais pas | <i>I do</i> | <i>not go.</i> | <i>I am</i> | <i>not going.</i> |
| | tu ne vas pas | <i>thou dost</i> | | <i>thou art</i> | |
| | il ne va pas | <i>he does</i> | | <i>he is</i> | |
| | elle ne va pas | <i>she does</i> | | <i>she is</i> | |
| | nous n'allons pas | <i>we do</i> | | <i>we are</i> | |
| | vous n'allez pas | <i>you do</i> | | <i>you are</i> | |
| | ils ne vont pas | <i>they m. do</i> | | <i>they m. are</i> | |
| | elles ne vont pas | <i>they f. do</i> | | <i>they f. are</i> | |

PRÆTERIT INDEFINITE.

| | | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|---------------------|------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| Compound tense. | Je ne suis pas | <i>I have</i> | <i>not gone.</i> | <i>I have</i> | <i>not been going.</i> |
| | tu n'es pas | <i>thou hast</i> | | <i>thou hast</i> | |
| | il n'est pas | <i>he has</i> | | <i>he has</i> | |
| | elle n'est pas | <i>she has</i> | | <i>she has</i> | |
| | nous ne sommes pas | <i>we have</i> | | <i>we have</i> | |
| | vous n'êtes pas | <i>you have</i> | | <i>you have</i> | |
| | ils ne sont pas | <i>they m. have</i> | | <i>they m. have</i> | |
| | elles ne sont pas | <i>they f. have</i> | | <i>they f. have</i> | |

IMPERFECT.

| | | | | | |
|---------------|--------------------|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| Simple tense. | Je n'allais pas | <i>I was</i> | <i>not going.</i> | <i>I did</i> | <i>not go.</i> |
| | tu n'allais pas | <i>thou wast</i> | | <i>thou didst</i> | |
| | il n'allait pas | <i>he was</i> | | <i>he did</i> | |
| | nous n'allions pas | <i>we were</i> | | <i>we did</i> | |
| | vous n'alliez pas | <i>you were</i> | | <i>you did</i> | |
| | ils n'allaient pas | <i>they were</i> | | <i>they did</i> | |

PLUPERFECT.

| | | | | | |
|-------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| Com. tense. | Je n'étais pas | <i>I had</i> | <i>not gone.</i> | <i>I had</i> | <i>not been going.</i> |
| | tu n'étais pas | <i>thou hadst</i> | | <i>thou hadst</i> | |
| | il n'était pas | <i>he had</i> | | <i>he had</i> | |
| | nous n'étions pas | <i>we had</i> | | <i>we had</i> | |
| | vous n'étiez pas | <i>you had</i> | | <i>you had</i> | |
| | ils n'étaient pas | <i>they had</i> | | <i>they had</i> | |

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

| | | |
|---------------|--------------------|--------------------------|
| Simple tense. | Je n'allai pas | <i>I did not go</i> |
| | tu n'allas pas | <i>thou didst not go</i> |
| | il n'alla pas | <i>he did not go</i> |
| | nous n'allâmes pas | <i>we did not go</i> |
| | vous n'allâtes pas | <i>you did not go</i> |
| | ils n'allèrent pas | <i>they did not go</i> |

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

| | | | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| Compound tense. | Je ne fus pas | allé m. allée f. | <i>I had</i> | <i>not gone.</i> | <i>I had</i> | <i>not been going.</i> |
| | tu ne fus pas | | <i>thou hadst</i> | | <i>thou hadst</i> | |
| | il ne fut pas | | <i>he had</i> | | <i>he had</i> | |
| | nous ne fûmes pas | allés m. allées f. | <i>we had</i> | | <i>we had</i> | |
| | vous ne fûtes pas | | <i>you had</i> | | <i>you had</i> | |
| | ils ne furent pas | | <i>they had</i> | | <i>they had</i> | |

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

| | | | | | | |
|---------------|------------------|----------------|----------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|
| Simple tense. | Je n'irai pas | <i>not go.</i> | <i>I shall, or will</i> | <i>not be going.</i> | <i>I shall, or will</i> | <i>not be going.</i> |
| | tu n'iras pas | | <i>thou shalt, or will</i> | | <i>thou shalt, or will</i> | |
| | il n'ira pas | | <i>he shall, or will</i> | | <i>he shall, or will</i> | |
| | nous n'irons pas | <i>not go.</i> | <i>we shall, or will</i> | | <i>we shall, or will</i> | |
| | vous n'irez pas | | <i>you shall, or will</i> | | <i>you shall, or will</i> | |
| | ils n'iront pas | | <i>they shall, or will</i> | | <i>they shall, or will</i> | |

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

| | | | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Compound tense. | Je ne serai pas | allé m. allée f. | <i>I shall, or will</i> | <i>not have gone.</i> | <i>I shall, or will</i> | <i>not have been going.</i> |
| | tu ne seras pas | | <i>thou shalt, or will</i> | | <i>thou shalt, or will</i> | |
| | il ne sera pas | | <i>he shall, or will</i> | | <i>he shall, or will</i> | |
| | nous ne serons pas | allés m. allées f. | <i>we shall, or will</i> | | <i>we shall, or will</i> | |
| | vous ne serez pas | | <i>you shall, or will</i> | | <i>you shall, or will</i> | |
| | ils ne seront pas | | <i>they shall, or will</i> | | <i>they shall, or will</i> | |

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

| | | | | |
|---------------|-------------------|---|---|---------------|
| Simple tense. | Je n'irais pas | <i>I should, would, or could</i> | <i>I should, would, or could</i> | not be going. |
| | tu n'irais pas | <i>thou shouldst, wouldst, or couldst</i> | <i>thou shouldst, wouldst, or couldst</i> | |
| | il n'irait pas | <i>he should, would, or could</i> | <i>he should, would, or could</i> | |
| | nous n'irions pas | <i>we should, would, or could</i> | <i>we should, would, or could</i> | |
| | vous n'iriez pas | <i>you should, would, or could</i> | <i>you should, would, or could</i> | |
| | ils n'iraient pas | <i>they should, would, or could</i> | <i>they should, would, or could</i> | |
| | | not go. | | |

PAST.

| | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------------|---|---|----------------------|
| Compound tense. | Je ne serais pas | <i>I should, would, or could</i> | <i>I should, would, or could</i> | not have been going. |
| | tu ne serais pas | <i>thou shouldst, wouldst, or couldst</i> | <i>thou shouldst, wouldst, or couldst</i> | |
| | il ne serait pas | <i>he should, would, or could</i> | <i>he should, would, or could</i> | |
| | nous ne serions pas | <i>we should, would, or could</i> | <i>we should, would, or could</i> | |
| | vous ne seriez pas | <i>you should, would, or could</i> | <i>you should, would, or could</i> | |
| | ils ne seraient pas | <i>they should, would, or could</i> | <i>they should, would, or could</i> | |
| | | not have gone. | | |

IMPERATIVE.

| | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|--------|
| ne va pas | <i>do (thou) not go</i> | <i>be (thou) not</i> | going. |
| qu'il n'aille pas | <i>let him not go</i> | <i>let him not be</i> | |
| qu'elle n'aille pas | <i>let her not go</i> | <i>let her not be</i> | |
| n'allons pas | <i>let us not go</i> | <i>let us not be</i> | |
| n'allez pas | <i>do (ye) not go</i> | <i>be (ye or you) not</i> | |
| qu'ils n'aillent pas | <i>let them m. not go</i> | <i>let them m. not be</i> | |
| qu'elles n'aillent pas | <i>let them f. not go</i> | <i>let them f. not be</i> | |

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

| | | | | | |
|---------------|------------------|------------------|---------|------------------|---------------|
| Simple tense. | que je n'aïlle | that I may | not go. | that I may | not be going. |
| | pas | | | | |
| | que tu n'aïlles | that thou mayest | | that thou mayest | |
| | pas | | | | |
| | qu'il n'aïlle | that he may | | that he may | |
| | pas | | | | |
| | que nous n'al- | that we may | | that we may | |
| | lions pas | | | | |
| | que vous n'al- | that you may | | that you may | |
| | liez pas | | | | |
| | qu'ils n'aïllent | that they may | | that they may | |
| | pas | | | | |

PRÆTERIT.

| | | | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------|---------------|--|---------------|----------------------|
| Compound tense. | que je nesois | | that I may | | that I may | not have been going. |
| | pas | | | | | |
| | que tu nesois | allé m. | that thou | | that thou | |
| | pas | allée f. | mayest | | mayest | |
| | qu'il ne soit | | that he may | | that he may | |
| | pas | | | | | |
| | que nous ne | | that we may | | that we may | |
| | soyons pas | | | | | |
| | que vous ne | allés m. | that you may | | that you may | |
| | soyez pas | allées f. | | | | |
| | qu'ils ne soi- | | that they may | | that they may | |
| | ent pas | | | | | |

IMPERFECT.

| | | | | | |
|---------------|--------------------|-----------------|---------|-----------------|---------------|
| Simple tense. | que je n'allasse | that I might | not go. | that I might | not be going. |
| | pas | | | | |
| | que tu n'allasses | that thou | | that thou | |
| | pas | might'st | | might'st | |
| | qu'il n'allât pas | that he might | | that he might | |
| | que nous n'allas- | that we might | | that we might | |
| | sions pas | | | | |
| | que vous n'allas- | that you might | | that you might | |
| | siez pas | | | | |
| | qu'ils n'allassent | that they might | | that they might | |
| | pas | | | | |

PLUPERFECT.

| | | | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------|-----------|--|-----------|----------------------|
| Compound tense. | que je ne fus- | | that I | | that I | not have been going. |
| | se pas | | might | | might | |
| | que tu ne | allé m. | that thou | | that thou | |
| | fusses pas | allée f. | might'st | | might'st | |
| | qu'il ne fût | | that he | | that he | |
| | pas | | might | | might | |
| | que nous ne | | that we | | that we | |
| | fussions pas | | might | | might | |
| | que vous ne | allés m. | that you | | that you | |
| | fussiez pas | allées f. | might | | might | |
| | qu'ils ne fus- | | that they | | that they | |
| | sent pas | | might | | might | |

OF THE INTERROGATIVE VERBS.

The verb *envoyer*, which has been selected as an example of the mode of conjugating an interrogative verb, is one of the two irregular verbs of the first conjugation. It is irregular only in the future and conditional. The other tenses being regular, can be easily formed when wanted.

The interrogative verbs are formed by placing the nominative pronouns after the verb. Thus, the first person, present indicative, of all the verbs of the first conjugation, which ends in *e* mute, is followed by a syllable ending in *e* mute. Ex. *parle-je*, *do I speak?* which cannot be pronounced. [See page 7, on euphony.] To obviate this difficulty, the first *e* must be sounded. Some grammarians have thought fit to mark it with an acute accent, although it must be pronounced as *è*; but, as this mode is not supported by any satisfactory arguments, it has been thought best to place a grave accent on it according to the general rule; as, *parlè-je?* *do I speak?*

The final *e* mute in verbs ending in *ayer*, *oyer*, *uyer*, *eler*, in the verb *peser*, &c. occasions an essential alteration in the verb; but that alteration will not take place in the first person present of the indicative of those verbs when interrogatively used, as then the *e* ceases to be mute.

EXAMPLE. *Payè-je?* Do I pay? and not *paie-je*. *Employè-je?* Do I employ? and not *emploie-je*. *Appuyè-je?* Do I support? and not *appuie-je*. *Appelè-je?* Do I call? and not *appelle-je*. *Achetè-je?* Do I buy? and not *achette-je*. *Pesè-je?* Do I weigh, and not *pèse-je*, &c.

The expression, *EST-CE-QUE?* *is it that?* being prefixed to affirmative and negative verbs, makes them interrogative without any other alteration. It is frequently used, and is often preferred to the other mode of interrogation, which, in some instances, would offend a delicate ear.

It is preferred, to the other method, in the first person, indicative present, of all verbs ending in *e*, for the *e* being made grave, as explained above, that person sounds too much like the imperfect or preterit definite. Thus we say, *Est-ce que parle?* &c. instead of *parlè-je*, &c. most generally used in poetry. *Est-ce que* is also used when the verbs with which the question is made are monosyllables, in which case the other method is very awkward. Ex. *est-ce que je dors?* instead of *dors-je?* do I sleep? *est-ce que je mens?* instead of *mens-je?* do I lie?

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

| | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| Simple Tense. | envoyè-je? | do I send | am I sending |
| | envoies-tu? | dost thou send | art thou sending |
| | envoie-t-il? | does he send | is he sending |
| | envoie-t-elle? | does she send | is she sending |
| | envoyons-nous | do we send | are we sending |
| | envoyez-vous? | do you send | are you sending |
| | envoient-ils? | do they m. send | are they m. sending |
| | envoient-elles? | do they f. send | are they f. sending |

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

| | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| Compound Tense. | ai-je envoyé? | have I sent | have I been sending |
| | as-tu envoyé? | hast thou sent | hast thou been sending |
| | a-t-il envoyé? | has he sent | has he been sending |
| | a-t-elle envoyé? | has she sent | has she been sending |
| | avons-nous envoyé? | have we sent | have we been sending |
| | avez-vous envoyé? | have you sent | have you been sending |
| | ont-ils envoyé? | have they m. sent | have they m. been sending |
| | ont-elles envoyé? | have they f. sent | have they f. been sending |

IMPERFECT.

| | | | |
|--------------|----------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| Simp. Tense. | envoyais-je | was I sending | did I send |
| | envoyais-tu | wast thou sending | didst thou send |
| | envoyait-il | was he sending | did he send |
| | envoyions-nous | were we sending | did we send |
| | envoyiez-vous | were you sending | did you send |
| | envoyaient-ils | were they sending | did they send |

PLUPERFECT.

| | | | |
|--------------|-------------|------------|------------------------------|
| Comp. Tense. | avais-je | had I | had I been sending |
| | avais-tu | hadst thou | hadst thou been send- ing |
| | avait-il | had he | had he been sending |
| | avions-nous | had we | had we been sending |
| | aviez-vous | had you | had you been send- ing |
| | avaient-ils | had they | had they been send- ing |

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

| | | |
|--------------|----------------|-----------------|
| Simp. Tense. | envoyai-je | did I send |
| | envoyas-tu | didst thou send |
| | envoya-t-il | did he send |
| | envoyâmes-vous | did we send |
| | envoyâtes-vous | did you send |
| | envoyèrent-ils | did they send |

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

| | | | | |
|--------------|------------|------------|------------|--------------|
| Comp. Tense. | eus-je | had I | had I | been sending |
| | eus-tu | hadst thou | hadst thou | |
| | eut-il | had he | had he | |
| | eûmes-nous | had we | had we | |
| | eûtes-vous | had you | had you | |
| | eurent-ils | had they | had they | |

FUTURE.

| | | | | |
|---------------|----------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------|------------|
| Simple Tense. | enverrai-je | shall I send | shall I | be sending |
| | enverras-tu | shalt thou or wilt thou send | shalt or wilt thou | |
| | enverra-t-il | shall or will he send | shall or will he | |
| | enverrons-nous | shall we send | shall we | |
| | enverrez-vous | shall or will you send | shall or will you | |
| | enverront-ils | shall or will they send | shall or will they | |

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

| | | | | | | | |
|--------------|---|-------------|----------|--------------------|---|-------------------------|----------------|
| Comp. Tense. | { | aurai-je | } envoie | shall I | { | shall I have | } been sending |
| | | auras-tu | | shalt or wilt thou | | shalt or wilt thou have | |
| | | aura-t-il | | shall or will he | | shall or will he have | |
| | | aurons-nous | | shall we | | shall we have | |
| | | avez-vous | | shall or will you | | shall or will you have | |
| | | auront-ils | | shall or will they | | shall or will they have | |

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

| | | | | | | | |
|---------------|---|-----------------|---|--|---|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| Simple Tense. | { | enverrais-je | } | should or could I send | { | should or could I | } be sending |
| | | enverrais-tu | | shouldst, couldst or wouldst thou send | | shouldst, couldst or wouldst thou | |
| | | enverrait-il | | should, could, or would he send | | should, could or would he | |
| | | enverrions-nous | | should, or could we send | | should or could we | |
| | | enverriez-vous | | should, could or would you send | | should or would you | |
| | | enverraient-ils | | should, would, or could they send | | should or would they | |

PAST.

| | | | | | | | |
|-----------------|---|--------------|----------|-----------------------------------|---|--|----------------|
| Compound Tense. | { | aurais-je | } envoie | should or could I | { | should or could I have | } been sending |
| | | aurais-tu | | shouldst, couldst or wouldst thou | | shouldst, couldst or wouldst thou have | |
| | | aurait-il | | should, would or could he | | should, could or would he have | |
| | | aurions-nous | | should or could we | | should or could we have | |
| | | auriez-vous | | should, could or would you | | should, could or would you have | |
| | | auraient-ils | | should, would or could they | | should, could or would they have | |

The verb can be formed interrogatively and negatively, by placing, as with the negative interrogative verb *AVOIR*, *ne*, before the verb, and *pas* after the nominative pronoun.

The auxiliary, *to do*, is used in English. In compound tenses the participle past comes last, as usual.

n'envoyé-je pas?

do I not send?

n'ai-je pas envoyé?

have I not sent?

&c.

&c.

FORMATION OF THE TENSES OF THE VERBS.

Having committed to memory a conjugation perfectly from beginning to end, does not always enable a pupil to use the verb immediately in the proper tense and person. Far from this, many pupils are obliged to think of the whole tense and sometimes of the whole verb, before they get the right person. The best method to proceed, is, to acquire a perfect idea of the analogy existing between the verbs, so that when the pupil shall have become acquainted with the inflexions and terminations of the different tenses and the way to form them, they will present themselves naturally to his mind, and give him no further trouble.

Besides the four regular conjugations, there are many irregular verbs, which follow no particular rule. By applying to them the same method, many tenses and persons of these verbs can be found instantly, which will render the study of the irregular verbs very easy. But to endeavor to learn the verbs, without proceeding in a regular way, has always proved, and always will prove, a futile and vain attempt.

Every one who has learned the preceding verbs, must have perceived that the termination of several tenses is common to all the verbs.

| | INDICATIVE. | | | COND. | IMPE- | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|---------|-------------|----------|--------|--------|---------|--------------|--------|
| present | imp. | preterit | future | | RATIVE. | pres. | imp. |
| — | ais | (ai)-s | rai | rais | — | e | asse |
| — | ais | (as)-s | ras | rais | — | es | assez |
| — | ait | (a)-t | ra | rait | — | e | t |
| ons | ions | mes | rons | rions | ons | ions | ssions |
| ez | iez | tes | rez | riez | ez | iez | ssiez |
| ent | aient | rent | ront | raient | ent | ent | ssent |

Some of the tenses are formed from others that are called primitive.

These are the present of the infinitive and present partici-

ple, the present and the preterit of the indicative. If an example now is taken in the verb *parler*, it will be found that from the present of the infinitive are formed the future and conditional, by adding *ai* and *ais*. From the participle present are formed the three persons of the plural of the present of the indicative, by changing *ant* into *ons, ez, ent*; the imperfect, by changing *ant* into *ais*; and the present of the subjunctive, by changing *ant* into *e* mute. From the first person singular of the present of the indicative is formed the second person imperative, by taking off the pronoun *je*; the first and second of the plural are alike in both tenses, but the imperative does not take the pronouns; the third person, both singular and plural of the imperative, are borrowed from the subjunctive. From the preterit of the indicative, the imperfect of the subjunctive is formed by changing *ai* into *asse*.

REMARK. Each conjugation is preceded by the explanation of the formation of the tenses.

As the irregular verbs are all given in a particular list, there is no occasion for giving the irregularities respecting the formation of the tenses.

It has been thought best not to encumber the grammar with the compound tenses, as they are a mere repetition of the auxiliary verbs, and the past participle.

If the pupil be very young, it would be well for him to write an example of all regular and irregular verbs.

SECOND CONJUGATION IN *IR*.

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

IND. PRES. Puniss-ANT nous punissons. IMP. puniss-ANT je puniss-AIS. FUT. punir je puni-rai. IMPERAT. je punis, punis. SUB. PRES. puniss-ANT que je puniss-E. IMP. je puni-s que je puni-ssE.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

Pun-ir to punish to be punishing

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Pun-issant punishing

PAST.

Pun-i-m-ie-f punished

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

| | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Je pun- <i>is</i> | <i>I punish</i> | <i>I do punish</i> | <i>I am punishing</i> |
| tu pun- <i>is</i> | <i>thou punishest</i> | <i>thou dost punish</i> | <i>thou art punish- ing</i> |
| il pun- <i>it</i> | <i>he punishes</i> | <i>he does punish</i> | <i>he is punishing</i> |
| nous pun- <i>iss-</i> ONS, &c. | <i>we punish</i> | <i>we do punish</i> | <i>we are punish- ing</i> |

IMPERFECT.

| | | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| Je pun- <i>issais</i> &c. | <i>I was punishing</i> | <i>I punished</i> | <i>I did punish</i> |
|------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

| | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| Je pun- <i>is</i> &c. | <i>I punished</i> | <i>I did punish</i> |
|--------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|

FUTURE.

| | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| Je pun- <i>irai</i> &c. | <i>I shall or will pun- ish</i> | <i>I shall or will have been punishing</i> |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|--|---|
| Je pun- <i>irais</i> &c. | <i>I should, could or would punish</i> | <i>I should, would, or could be punishing</i> |
|-----------------------------|--|---|

IMPERATIVE.

| | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|---|
| Pun- <i>is</i> &c. | <i>punish (thou)</i> | <i>do (thou) punish be (thou) pun- ishing</i> |
|-----------------------|----------------------|---|

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

| | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Que je pun- <i>isse</i> &c. | <i>that I may punish</i> | <i>that I may be pun- ishing</i> |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|--|
| Que je pun- <i>is-se</i> &c. | <i>that I might punish</i> | <i>that I might be pun- ishing</i> |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|--|

More than 400 verbs ending in *ir*, are conjugated like this verb.

Write *finir*, to finish, and *unir*, to unite.

The irregular verbs of this conjugation are in a list by themselves.

THIRD CONJUGATION IN OIR.

REMARK. As the *c* is soft throughout the verbs ending in *cevoir*, it takes a cedilla when before *o* or *u*.

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

IND. PRES. Rec-*evant*, rec-*evons*. — *es*, ils rec-*oivent*. IMP. Rec-*evant*, je rec-*evais*. FUT. Rec-*evoir*, je rec-*evrai*. IMPERAT. Je rec-*ois*, rec-*ois*. SUBJ. PRES. Rec-*evant*, que je rec-*oive*, *es*, *e*, rec-*evions*, *eviez*, rec-*oivent*. IMP. je rec-*us*, que je rec-*usse*.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. Rec-*evoir* to receive to be receiving

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. rec-*evant* receiving PAST. rec-*u* m. *ue* f. received

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

| | | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| Je rec- <i>ois</i> | <i>I receive</i> | <i>I do receive</i> | <i>I am</i> | } <i>receiving.</i> |
| tu rec- <i>ois</i> | <i>thou receivest</i> | <i>thou dost receive</i> | <i>thou art</i> | |
| ils rec- <i>oient</i> | <i>he receiveth</i> | <i>he does receive</i> | <i>he is</i> | |
| nous rec- <i>evons</i> | <i>we receive</i> | <i>we do receive</i> | <i>we are</i> | |
| vous rec- <i>eviez</i> | <i>you receive</i> | <i>you do receive</i> | <i>you are</i> | |
| ils rec- <i>oivent</i> | <i>they receive</i> | <i>they do receive</i> | <i>they are</i> | |

IMPERFECT.

Je rec-*evais* *I was receiving* *I received* & *I did receive*
&c.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Je rec-*us* *I received* *I did receive*

FUTURE.

Je rec-*evrai* *I shall, or will receive* *I shall, or will be receiving*
&c.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je rec-*evrais* *I should, would, or could receive* *I should, would, or could be receiving*
&c.

IMPERATIVE.

Rec-*ois* *receive (thou)* *do (thou) receive* *be (thou) receiving*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

| | | | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| que je rec- <i>oive</i> | <i>that I may</i> | } <i>receiving.</i> | <i>that I may</i> | } <i>be receiving.</i> |
| que tu rec- <i>oives</i> | <i>that thou mayest</i> | | <i>that thou mayest</i> | |
| qu'il rec- <i>oive</i> | <i>that he may</i> | | <i>that he may</i> | |
| que nous rec- <i>evions</i> | <i>that we may</i> | | <i>that we may</i> | |
| que vous rec- <i>eviez</i> | <i>that you may</i> | | <i>that you may</i> | |
| qu'ils rec- <i>oivent</i> | <i>that they may</i> | | <i>that they may</i> | |

IMPERFECT.

que je reç-usse that I might receive that I might be receiving
&c.

There are but *six* regular verbs conjugated like *recevoir* ; *percevoir*, to receive (duties ;) *apercevoir*, to perceive ; *concevoir*, to conceive ; *décevoir*, to deceive ; *devoir*, to owe *redevoir*, to owe again.

The irregular verbs are placed by themselves.

FOURTH CONJUGATION, IN RE.

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

IND. PRES. Rendant, nous rend-ons. IMP. Rendant, je rendais. FUT. Rendre, je rendrai. IMPERAT. Je rends rends. SUBJ. PRES. Rendant, que je rende. IMP. je rendis, que je rendisse.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. Rend-re to render to be rendering

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

rend-ant rendering rend-u mas. rend-ue fem. rendered

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

| | | | |
|---------------|----------------|------------------|--------------------|
| Je rend-s | I render | I do render | I am rendering |
| tu rend-s | thou renderest | thou dost render | thou art rendering |
| il rend | he renders | he does render | he is rendering |
| nous rend-ONS | we render | we do render | we are rendering |
| &c. | | | |

IMPERFECT.

| | | | |
|-------------|-----------------|------------|--------------|
| Je rend-AIS | I was rendering | I rendered | I did render |
| &c. | | | |

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

| | | |
|------------|------------|--------------|
| Je rend-is | I rendered | I did render |
| &c. | | |

FUTURE.

| | | |
|-------------|------------------------|------------------------------|
| Je rend-RAI | I shall or will render | I shall or will be rendering |
|-------------|------------------------|------------------------------|

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je rend-RAIS *I should, could* *I should, could*
 or would render *or would be rendering*

IMPERATIVE.

rend-s *render (thou)* *do (thou) render* *be (thou) rendering*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

que je rend-E *that I may render* *that I may be rendering*

IMPERFECT.

que je rend-isse *that I might render* *that I might be rendering*

Write on this conjugation the verbs *vend-re*, to sell ;
répondre, to answer ; *perdre*, to lose.

The irregular verbs are placed by themselves.

OF THE DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERBS.

There are different kinds of verbs, as *active*, *passive*, *neuter*, *pronominal*, and *impersonal* ; but their inflections and terminations still follow the conjugation to which they respectively belong.

OF ACTIVE VERBS.

A verb is called *active* in French, when it has an objective direct. It answers to the English transitive verbs.

All active verbs take the auxiliary *avoir*, to have.

OF NEUTER VERBS.

A verb is called *neuter*, when it cannot be followed by an objective direct.

Forty-four of more than 600 neuter verbs, take the auxiliary to be, *être*.

The observations which have been made on the verb *aller*, respecting the auxiliary, must be remembered.

Those verbs which are marked with an asterisk, take either auxiliary, according to their sense.

A LIST OF THE NEUTER VERBS, WHICH TAKE THE AUXILIARY TO BE.

| | | | |
|--------------|-----------------|-------------|------------------|
| Aborder* | to land, &c. | intervenir | to intervene |
| accourir | to run to | monter* | to go up |
| aller | to go | mourir | to die |
| apparaître* | to appear | naître | to be born |
| arriver | to arrive | partir | to set out |
| cesser* | to cease | parvenir | to attain |
| changer* | to change | passer* | to pass away |
| contrevenir* | to contravene | périr* | to perish |
| convenir* | to agree | provenir | to come from |
| décamper | to decamp | rajeunir* | to grow young |
| décéder | to die | redescendre | to go down |
| déchoir | to decay | | again |
| demeurer* | to stay or re- | redevenir | to become again |
| | main | remonter* | to go up again |
| descendre* | to go down | rentrer | to come in again |
| devenir | to become | repartir | to set out again |
| disconvenir | to deny or dis- | ressortir | to go out again |
| | own | rester* | to stay |
| disparaître* | to disappear | résulter* | to result |
| échapper* | to escape | retomber | to fall again |
| échoir | to become due | retourner | to return |
| embellir* | to grow hand- | revenir | to come back |
| | some | sortir | to go out |
| éclore | to blow | survenir | to befall |
| entrer | to enter | tomber | to fall |
| expirer | to expire | venir | to come |
| grandir | to grow tall | vieillir* | to grow old |

REMARK. Generally, the verbs marked with an asterisk are used in their compound tenses with the auxiliary *avoir*, to have, when they merely express an action which took place, or will take place; but they take *être*, to be, when they express the state resulting from that action. Thus I will say *mon frère a demeuré en Italie*, if I merely express that the action took place; but I must say, *mon frère est demeuré en Italie*, if I mean that my brother is still in Italy, as I then express the state resulting from that action.

OF PASSIVE VERBS.

A passive verb is always formed with the auxiliary *être*, to be, throughout all the tenses and moods. It expresses an

action that the nominative of the verb suffers, without expressing what is the agent, unless it is introduced by some preposition.

EXAMPLES.

Je suis persécuté *I am persecuted*
 Ils furent battus par l'ennemi *They were beaten by the enemy*

An active verb can always be made passive.

EXAMPLE.

Cet homme vous blame ; vous êtes *That man blames you ; you are*
 blâmé par cet homme. *blamed by that man.*

This verb requires no other explanation except that the agreement between the participle and the nominative must be strictly observed.

OF PRONOMINAL VERBS.

Generally, a verb is called pronominal when it is conjugated throughout with two pronouns of the same person ; as, *je me flatte*, I flatter myself. But verbs of this kind may be divided in three classes, viz. *reflective*, *reciprocal*, and *pronominal*. However, for convenience, the word *pronominal* will, in the course of the work, be used for either of these three kinds of verbs.

OF REFLECTIVE VERBS.

A verb is reflective, when the action it expresses is performed by the agent upon himself, as in the above example. *Je me flatte*, I flatter myself. It may be easily perceived, that the English pronouns, *myself*, *thyself*, *himself*, *herself*, *ourselves*, &c. are expressed in French, as if they were the personal pronouns, *me*, *thee*, *him*, *her*, *us*, &c. Their place is determined by the rules on the personal pronouns.

OF RECIPROCAL VERBS.

If the action be performed simultaneously, by several persons, against one another, the verb that expresses it is called *reciprocal*. Ex. *nous nous aimons*, we love each other. This verb has no singular, and is conjugated as the plural of a reflective verb. If the sense of the sentence be doubtful, the words *l'un*, *l'autre*, *les uns*, *les autres*, one another, should be added to the verb.

Ex. nous nous aimons l'un l'autre. *we love each other.*

Verbs called pronominal, are those which take the double pronoun, without any necessity ; as, *Je me repens*, I repent.

These different kinds of verbs are all marked in dictionaries by the pronoun *se*, or *s'* being prefixed to the verb.

This pronoun is used in the third person of these verbs and answers for *himself*, *herself*, and *themselves*. A longer explanation of it would now be useless ; but the learner may be told, that another pronoun of the third person would not answer, as it would then appear to represent another person. If you say *il le loue*, instead of *il se loue*, you entirely change the meaning of the sentence ; for the first means, *he praises him* ; the second, *he praises himself*.

These verbs take the auxiliary *être*, to be, and have the pronouns added to them in the same manner ; as, *se repentir*, to repent.

CONJUGATION OF A PRONOMINAL VERB.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. *Se repentir* *to repent* *to be repenting*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. *se repentant* *repenting*
 PAST. *repenti m. -ie f.* *repented*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

| | | | | | | |
|---------------|--------------|-----------------------|--------------------|------------|-------------------|--------|
| Simple tense. | Je me re- | <i>I repent</i> | <i>I am</i> | repenting. | <i>I do</i> | repent |
| | pens | | | | | |
| | tu te re- | <i>thou repentest</i> | <i>thou art</i> | | <i>thou doest</i> | |
| | pens | | | | | |
| | il se re- | <i>he repents</i> | <i>he is</i> | | <i>he does</i> | |
| | pent | | | | | |
| | elle se re- | <i>she repents</i> | <i>she is</i> | | <i>she does</i> | |
| | pent | | | | | |
| | nous nous | <i>we repent</i> | <i>we are</i> | | <i>we do</i> | |
| | repentons | | | | | |
| | vous vous | <i>you repent</i> | <i>you are</i> | | <i>you do</i> | |
| | repentez | | | | | |
| | ils se re- | <i>they m. repent</i> | <i>they m. are</i> | | <i>they m. do</i> | |
| | pentent | | | | | |
| | elles se re- | <i>they f. repent</i> | <i>they f. are</i> | | <i>they f. do</i> | |
| | pentent | | | | | |

PRÆTERIT DEFINITE.

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------|--|-------------------------------|---|-------------|---|-------------------|--|--|
| Compound tense. | Je me suis tu t'es il s'est elle s'est nous nous sommes | } repenti m. repentie f. | I have thou hast he has she has we have | } repented. | I have thou hast he has she has we have | } been repenting. | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | vous vous êtes ils se sont elles se sont | } repentis m. repenties f. | you have they m. have they f. have | | you have they m. have they f. have | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |

IMPERFECT.

| | | | |
|-----------------|------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| Je me repentaïs | <i>I was repenting</i> | <i>I repented</i> | <i>I did repent</i> |
| &c. | | | |

PLUPERFECT.

| | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| Je m'étais repenti | <i>I had repented</i> | <i>I had been repenting</i> |
| &c. | | |

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

| | | |
|------------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| Je me repentirai | <i>I shall, or will re- pent</i> | <i>I shall, or will be re- penting</i> |
| &c. | | |

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

| | | |
|---------------------|---|---|
| Je me serai repenti | <i>I shall, or will have repented</i> | <i>I shall, or will have been repenting</i> |
|---------------------|---|---|

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

| | | |
|-------------------|---|---|
| Je me repentirais | <i>I should, would, or could repent</i> | <i>I should, would, or could be repenting</i> |
|-------------------|---|---|

PAST.

| | | |
|---------------------------|--|--|
| Je me serais re- penti | <i>I should, would, or could have repented</i> | <i>I should, would, or could have been repenting</i> |
|---------------------------|--|--|

IMPERATIVE.

| | | | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|-----------|-------------------|--------------|
| Repens-toi | repent (thou) | do (thou) | be (thou) | } repenting. |
| | | repent | | |
| qu'il se repente | let him repent | | let him be | |
| qu'elle se repente | let her repent | | let her be | |
| repentons-nous | let us repent | | let us be | |
| repentéz-vous | repent | do (ye) | be (ye) | |
| | (ye or you) | repent | | |
| qu'ils se repentent | let them m. re- pent | | let them m. be | |
| qu'elles se repent- ent | let them f. re- pent | | let them f. be | |

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

que je me repente *that I may repent* *that I may be repenting*

IMPERFECT.

que je me sois repenti *that I may have repented* *that I may have been repenting*

PRETERIT.

que je me repentisse *that I might repent* *that I might be repenting*

PLUPERFECT.

que je me fusse repenti *that I might have repented* *that I might have been repenting*

The pronominal verb *se repentir*, which, respecting its inflexions, is an irregular verb of the second conjugation, has been selected as a model for all reflective, reciprocal and pronominal verbs, as they are all conjugated in the same manner.

All verbs which take the pronoun *se* or *s'* in their infinitive are conjugated like *se repentir*, concerning the arrangement of the pronouns; but their inflexions and terminations follow the conjugation to which they respectively belong by the termination of their infinitive.

PRONOMINAL VERBS IN THE INTERROGATIVE OR NEGATIVE.

When these verbs are interrogative or negative, they are formed in the same way as all the preceding verbs. It must be observed that the negative *ne* must be placed before the objective pronoun, in order that this pronoun should be immediately before the verb, according to the rule.

EXAMPLES.

NEGATIVE.

Je ne me promène pas *I do not walk*
Je ne me suis pas promené *I have not walked*

The imperative of the negative pronominal verb, is according to the general rule,

ne te flatte pas? *do (thou) not flatter thyself*
qu'il ne se flatte pas *let him not flatter himself*
ne nous flattons pas *let us not flatter ourselves*
ne vous flattez pas *do not flatter yourself or yourselves*
qu'ils ne se flattent pas *let them not flatter themselves*

INTERROGATIVE.

me punis-je? *do I punish myself?*
me suis-je puni? *have I punished myself?*

INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE.

| | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| ne m'aperçois-je pas ? | do I not perceive ? |
| ne me suis-je pas aperçu ? | have I not perceived ? |

Write the verb *se rappeler*, to recollect, affirmatively; *s'habiller*, to dress one's self, negatively; *s'évanouir*, to faint away, interrogatively; and *se rendre*, to surrender, interro-negatively.

Should the French verb be reflective, the English verb must be conjugated throughout with the pronouns myself, thyself, &c.

In the verb *s'en aller*, to go away, a derivative from *aller*, the word *en*, which signifies *from hence*, *from thence*, is throughout the verb placed immediately before; as, *Je m'en vais*, I go away; *Je m'en suis allé*, I have gone away.

The imperative is used thus.

AFFIRMATIVE.

| | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| va-t'en | go (thou) away |
| qu'il s'en aille | let him go away |
| allons-nous-en | let us go away |
| allez-vous-en | go (ye or you) away |
| qu'ils s'en aillent | let them go away |

NEGATIVE.

| | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| ne t'en va pas | do (thou) not go away |
| qu'il ne s'en aille pas | let him not go away |
| ne nous en allons pas | let us not go away |
| ne vous en allez pas | do (ye) not go away |
| qu'ils ne s'en aillent pas | let them not go away |

OF THE IMPERSONAL OR UNIMPERSONAL VERBS.

These verbs are thus called, because they express actions that are not performed by men. They are only used in the third person of the singular. The English pronoun, *it*, that precedes them, is expressed in French by *il*.

| | | | |
|------------|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| il pleut | it rains | il bruine | it drizzles |
| il neige | it snows | il importe | it matters |
| il grêle | it hails | il semble | it seems |
| il tonne | it thunders | il paraît | it appears |
| il éclaire | it lightens | il suffit que | it suffices |
| il gèle | it freezes | il convient | it becomes |
| il dégele | it thaws | il s'ensuit que | it follows that |
| il arrive | it happens | il est à propos | it is proper |
| il sied | it is becoming | il faut | it is necessary |
| il sied | it is unbecoming | il y a, &c. | there is or are |

Like all the other verbs, their inflexions will follow the conjugation to which they belong.

They take the auxiliary *avoir*, to have, but the verbs *Il arrive*, it happens, and *Il s'ensuit*, it follows that, are used with *être*, to be.

Some impersonal verbs, requiring particular explanations, will be placed in a chapter appropriated to that purpose.

OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

Some French verbs are irregular in their inflexions and terminations. They will be given in separate lists.

The learner will recall to his mind the formation of the tenses of each conjugation, and their inflexions and terminations. (See page 67 and 68.)

It will be observed, that all tenses of a regular formation have been excluded from the lists.

1st REMARK. When the *future* of a verb is of an irregular formation, the *conditional* has the same irregularity. Its termination only is different.

2d REMARK. The feminine of all participles past, can be formed, when wanted, by adding a mute *e*.

3d REMARK. When the participle present of a verb ends in *yant*, the *y*, which precedes the termination, is preserved in all the tenses and persons formed from that participle; but it is changed into *i* before a mute *e*, according to the general rule.

4th REMARK. In some of the following verbs, the first person present of the indicative ends in *e* mute. This *e* will be made grave in the interrogative; as, *Cueille-je? Do I gather? Couvrière-je? Do I cover? It is better to say, Est-ce que je cueille? Est-ce que je couvre?—(See the remarks on the verb envoyer, page 64.)*

5th REMARK. Verbs marked with an asterisk (*) are those which are conjugated in their compound tenses with the auxiliary *être*, to be.

Those preceded by *se* or *s'* are pronominal. (See the verb *se repentir*, page 75.)

6th REMARK. The dash — which is used in the list, stands for the root of the verb.

N. B. It will be recollected that the two irregular verbs of the first conjugation, *aller*, to go, and *envoyer*, to send, are conjugated at length, page 59 and 64.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

| ENGLISH. | PRESENT. | PARTIC. PRESENT. | PART. PAST. | INDICATIVE. PRESENT. | PLUPERIT. DEFINITIVE. |
|---|--------------------|------------------|-------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>To sleep</i> | 1 <i>Dorm-ir</i> | | | <i>Dor s-s-t, Dorm</i> | |
| <i>to lie</i> (<i>to tell a lie</i>) | 2 <i>ment-ir</i> | | | <i>men-s-s-t, ment</i> | |
| <i>to set out</i> | 3 <i>part-ir</i> * | | | <i>par-s-s-t, part</i> | |
| <i>to feel</i> | 4 <i>sens-ir</i> | | | <i>sen-s-s-t, sent</i> | |
| <i>to serve</i> | 5 <i>serv-ir</i> | | | <i>ser-s-s-t, serv</i> | |
| <i>to go out</i> | 6 <i>sort-ir</i> * | | | <i>sort-s-s-t, sort</i> | |
| <i>to open</i> | 7 <i>ouv-ir</i> | | | <i>re-ouv-ir</i> | |
| <i>to offer</i> | 8 <i>off-ir</i> | | | <i>re-off-ir</i> | |
| <i>to suffer</i> | 9 <i>souff-ir</i> | | | <i>re-souff-ir</i> | |

+ Sentir is an active verb in French, and represents the English active transitive verb *to feel* and *to smell*; but it does not correspond to the English intransitive verb, *to feel*, which is translated in French by the pronominal verb *se sentir*.

DERIVATIVE OF THE ABOVE VERBS.

Derivative verbs are those which have been formed from others by prefixing one or more letters or syllables to the word, and which only differ from the primitive verb by the additional letter or syllable.

1. Endormir, *to lull asleep*; s'endormir, *to fall asleep*; se rendormir, *to fall asleep again*.
2. Démentir, *to give the lie*.

3. Départir, *to divide*; repartir (*) *to set out again*.
4. Consentir, *to consent*; pressentir, *to foresee*; ressentir, *to resent*.
5. Desservir, *to clear the table*.
6. Ressortir, (*) *to go out again*.
7. Rouvrir, *to open again*; entr'ouvrir, *to half open*; couvrir, *to cover*; recouvrir, *to cover again*; découvrir, *to discover*.
- 8 & 9. Have no derivative.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

| ENGLISH. | Indicative present. | Partic. present. | Pres. partic. | Partic. past. | Future. | Subjunc. present. |
|-----------------------|---------------------|------------------|---------------|---------------|---------|-------------------|
| to boil | 1 bouill-ir† | —ant | —i | —i | —irai | —e |
| to run | 2 cour-ir | —ant | —u | —u | —irai | —e |
| to fly (to run away) | 3 fu-ir | —ant | —i | —i | —irai | —e |
| to reveal (to clothe) | 4 revel-ir | —ant | —u | —u | —irai | —e |
| to die | 5 mour-ir* | —ant | mort | mort | —irai | —e |
| to acquire | 6 acquér-ir | —ant | acquis | acquis | —irai | —e |
| to gather | 7 cueill-ir | —ant | —i | —i | —irai | —e |
| to consult | 8 assaill-ir | —ant | —i | —i | —irai | —e |
| to build | 9 ten-ir* | —ant | —u | —u | —irai | —e |
| to come | 10 ven-ir* | —ant | —u | —u | —irai | —e |

† *Bouillir* is only a neuter verb in French. When used as an active in English, it cannot be translated in French, unless it be preceded by the irregular verb *faire*, to make, as, *to make boil*.

DERIVATIVES OF THE ABOVE VERBS.

1. Rebouillir, *to boil again.*
2. Accourir, * *to run to* ; concourir, *to concur* ; discourir, *to discourse* ; encourir, *to incur* ; parcourir, *to run over* ; recourir, *to have recourse* ; secourir, *to assist.*
3. S'enfuir, *to run away.*
6. S'enquérir, *to inquire* ; requérir, *to request.*
7. Accueillir, *to receive, to entertain* ; recueillir, *to collect.*
8. Tressaillir, *to start, to leap.*
9. S'abstenir de, *to abstain* ; appartenir, *to belong* ; contenir, *to contain* ; detenir, *to detain* ; entretenir, *to entertain* ; maintenir, *to maintain* ; obtenir, *to obtain* ; retenir, *to retain* ; soutenir, *to uphold.*
10. Circonvenir, *to circumvent* ; contrevenir, *to contravene* ; convenir, * *to agree* ; convenir, *to suit* ; devenir, * *to become* ; disconvenir, *to deny* ; intervenir, * *to intervene* ; parvenir, * *to attain* ; prévenir, *to prevent, to warn* ; provenir, * *to proceed* ; revenir, * *to come back* ; survenir, * *to befall.*

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Bénir, to bless, has two past participles ; the regular *béni*, *bénie*, blessed, and an irregular *bénit*, *bénite*, used for hallowed or holy ; as, *pain bénit*, hallowed bread ; *eau bénite*, holy water.

Fleurir, signifying to flourish, has its participle present irregular, and makes *florissant*, and, in the imperfect, *florissait* and *florissaient*.

Hair, to hate, is pronounced in two syllables, as the *i* is marked with a diæresis ; but the following persons are spelt and pronounced as a compound vowel : *Je hais, tu hais, il hait*, I hate, thou hatest, he hates, and the imperative *hais*, hate (*thou*.)

Faillir, to fail, is only used in the compound tenses, or in its preterit definite ; as, *j'ai failli, je faillis*.

Conquérir, to conquer ; the same as *faillir*. Ex. *J'ai conquis, je conquis*.

Oïr, to hear ; the same as *faillir*. *J'ai ouï, j'ouïs*.

Vêtir, to clothe, is only used in its compound tenses ; as, *j'ai vêtu*, or replaced by the verb *habiller*.

Géir, to lie, is an obsolete verb ; but still used in this case : *Ci-gé*, here lies, on monumental inscriptions.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

| ENG., 1811. | Infinit. present | Participle present. | Part. past. | Indicative present. | Imper. 2 ^d future | Future. | Imperative. | Subjunctive. present. |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|-------------|--|------------------------------|------------------------------------|--|---|
| to set | 1 asse-oir† | —yant | assis | asse- de- s- d- asse- y- ont ez, asse- tent | reg. reg. | asse- trai- or | regular | regular |
| to move | 2 mou-oir† | —ant | mu | meu- s- t- f, mou- vent- ez | reg. reg. | reg. asse- trai- or | regular | meu- v- ez e- ez mou- vent- ez |
| to ruin to be able | 3 pleu-oir† 4 pou-oir | —ant —ant | plu pu | il pleut il puit pour- s- t- f pou- vent- ez, pleu- vent | reg. reg. | il plut il puit pour- rai | (no imp.) regular | regu- lar |
| to know | 5 sav-oir† | sachant | sus | sais- t- f, sav- ons- ez- ent | sav- ois sus | saurai | sache, qu'il sache, sach- ons- ez- ent | reg. reg. |
| to see to foresee | 6 v-oir 7 pré-oir | —oyant —oyant | —u | — ois ois- oit- oy- ons | reg. reg. | verrai | regular | reg. |
| to provide to be worth | 8 pour-oir 9 val-oir† | —oyant —ant | —u | — ois ois- oit- oy- ons | reg. reg. | — ois- rai | regular | reg. |
| to prevail | 10 préval-oir | —ant | —u | préval- x- t- f, val- ent | reg. reg. | préval- drai | regular | préval- ent |
| to be willing to want to wish | 11 voul-oir†† | —ant | —u | préval- x- t- f, val- ent | reg. reg. | vou- drai | (t) | vou- llent- ez- ez, vou- llions- tes- ent |

† *Assoir* is very seldom used as an active verb. It is generally reflective; as, *s'asseoir*, and means *to sit down*.

‡ *Mouvoir* is only an active verb in French. It is used when spoken of large bodies, and differently replaced by *remuer*. *Se mouvoir*, to move one's self, is of a more general use.

§ *Pouvoir* is an impersonal verb. (See page 78.)
|| *Pouvoir*. The present of this verb expresses the three different English verbs or signs, *I am*

able, *I can, I may. Thou art able, thou canst, thou mayest, &c.* Thus the past tenses will answer for *I was able, I could, I might, &c.*

In the first person, present, indicative, *peux* cannot be used interrogatively. The word *puis* is then employed, *puis-je?* am I able? can I? may I?

This verb is also used as follows: *puissè-je!* may I! *puisse-tu!* mayest thou! *puisse-t-il!* *puisse-t-elle!* may he! may she! *puissions nous!* may we! *puissiez-vous!* may you! *puissent-ils!* *puissent-elles!* may they!

¶ An explanation of the use of this verb, *savoir*, will be found after the verb *connaître*, to know, an irregular verb of the fourth conjugation.

** The verb *valoir* includes both *to be* and *worth*, and corresponds throughout to the verb *to be*, followed by the word *worth*.

†† *Vouloir* requires a long explanation, which will be found in the second part of this work. However, it may be used now for the verbs *to be willing, to want, or to wish*.

The imperative of this verb *veuille, veuillons, veuillez*, is very often used, and corresponds to the English expressions, *be so kind or so good as to, or let us be so kind or so good as to*. It is generally followed by the word *bien*, and is the exact translation of the English imperative *please*, which cannot be translated by the verb *plaire*. Ex. *veuillez bien m'écouter*, please to listen to me.

DERIVATIVES OF THE ABOVE WORDS.

1. *Se rasseoir*, to sit down again.
2. *Emouvoir*, to stir up, to move, to touch, to soften.; *promouvoir*, to promote.
6. *Revoir*, to see again; *entrevoir*, to have a glimpse of.
9. *Equivaloir*, to be equivalent to.

Echoir, to fall to, to expire, is only used in commercial business, for notes, bills, &c. and only in the following instances, *Il échoit*, it expires; *il écherra*, it will expire; *il écherrait*, it would expire; and in compound tenses with the auxiliary *to be*; as, *il est échu*, &c., it has expired, &c.

Déchoir, to decay, is now obsolete, and is only used sometimes in compound tenses; as, *je suis déchu*, I have decayed.

Seoir, to become, to be fit, is only used as in the following sentence: *cela vous sied bien*, or *mal*, that becomes you well or ill; *cela lui siéra*, or *siérait bien*, or *mal*, that will or would become him, well or ill.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

| ENGLISH | Indicative present. | Participle present. | Imperative pres. | Indicative present. | Imperative future. | Future. | Subjunctive present. |
|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------|-----------|----------------------|
| to seem | 1 cou-d-re | cou-sant | cou-su | cou-da-ds d cou-s | cou-sis | | |
| to grind | 2 mou-d-re | mou-lant | mou-lu | mo-da-ds " mou-l | mou-lus | | |
| to resolve | 3 réso-d-re | ré-solvant | ré-solu or réso-lu | ré-sou-s-t, réso-lv | ré-solus | | |
| to take | 4 pren-d-re | prenant | pris [résous | pren-da-ds-d, pre-nons-cz-nent | pris | | |
| to beat | 5 batt-re | -ant | -u | ba-ta-ta-t, batt | -is | (regular) | |
| to put | 6 mett-re | -ant | mis | me-ta-ta-t, mett | mis | | |
| to break | 7 romp-re | -ant | -u | romp-s-s-t, romp | -is | | |
| to follow | 8 suiv-re | -ant | -i | suiv-s-s-t, suiv | vecus | | |
| to live (to be alive) | 9 viv-re | -ant | vecu | vi-v-s-t, viv | vecus | (regular) | |
| to please | 10 plai-rot | -ant | plu | plai-s-s-t, plais | plus | | |
| to keep secret | 11 tai-re | -ant | tu | tai-s-s-t, tais | tus | | |
| to do (to make) | 12 fai-re | feisant | -t | fai-s-s-t, fe-on-s, faites font | fit | terral | |
| to milk | 13 trai-re | trayant | -t | trai-s-s-t, tray | (no pres) | | |
| to appear | 14 paraît-re | paraissant | paru | pa-raît-s-s-t, paraiss | parus | (regular) | |
| to know | 15 connaît-re | connaissant | connu | connaît-s-s-t, connaît | connus | | |
| to grow | 16 croît-re | croissant | crû | croît-s-s-t, croisse | crus | (regular) | |
| to be born | 17 naît-re | naissant | né | naît, nais, naiss | naquis | | |
| to graze | 18 pâit-re | paisant | pu | pâit, pais, paiss | (no pres) | | |

† *Romp-re*, to break, is generally used in a metaphorical sense, or differently is translated by *Casser*.
 † *Plaire* is a neuter verb, which governs the preposition à, and requires an indirect objective to complete the sense. Thus we say, *vous me plaisez*, you please me. We cannot literally translate if

you please, but we say, *s'il vous plaît*, if it or *that* pleases you. It is the same with the expressions, if he or she pleases, if we or they please, &c.

† The difference between the two verbs *savoir* and *connaître*, both representing the English verb to know, is this: *Savoir* is used for things that we have learned, and therefore cannot be connected to persons. *Connaître* is used for persons or things, when we mean that we are acquainted with them, or that we have seen them. Ex. *Je sais ma leçon*, I know my lesson, because I can say that I have learned it; and *Je connais votre père*, I know your father, for I have not learned him, but I am acquainted with him. *Connaissez-vous ce portrait?* Do you know that portrait? I have not learned the portrait, but I am acquainted with it, I have seen it. Thus, by analogy, as we can learn a thing instantly, while a certain time is required to become acquainted with it, the verb *savoir* is used when the thing to which it refers is present; as, *Je ne sais pas s'il est sorti*, I do not know if he has gone out. Generally speaking, *connaître* is used for a thing that you have not learned, and *savoir* in every other instance.

In English, the verb *to know*, is generally followed by *how*, when it precedes an infinitive. In French, that word is very seldom used. In these circumstances, *to know* is expressed by *savoir*. Ex. *Savez-vous danser?* Do you know how to dance?

‖ *Naitre* answers both for the verb *to be* and for the word *born*, and exactly corresponds in all its tenses and persons to the same tense and person of the verb *to be*, followed by the word *born*.

DERIVATIVES OF THE ABOVE VERBS.

1. *Découdre*, to *unsew*; *recoudre*, to *sew again*.

2. *Remoudre*, to *grind again*.

Obs. *émoudre* and *remoudre*, to grind, to grind again, (knives) are now obsolete; we use *aiguiser*, to whet, or *repasser*, to set.

4. *Apprendre*, to *learn*; *désapprendre*, to *unlearn*; *comprendre*, to *understand*; *entreprendre*, to *undertake*; *se méprendre*, to *mistake*; *reprendre*, to *retake*, to *reply*; *surprendre*, to *surprise*.

5. Abattre, *to pull down* ; rebattre, *to abate* ; rebattre, *to beat again* ; combattre, *to fight* ; débattre, *to debate*.

6. Admettre, *to admit* ; commettre, *to commit* ; compromettre, *to expose, to compromise* ; se demettre, *to put out of joint, to resign* ; émettre, *to emit* ; omettre, *to omit* ; permettre, *to permit* ; promettre, *to promise* ; remettre, *to replace* ; soumettre, *to subject* ; transmettre, *to transmit* ; s'entremettre, *to intermeddle*.

7. Corrompre, *to corrupt* ; interrompre, *to interrupt*.

8. Poursuivre, *to pursue, to prosecute* ; s'ensuivre, *to ensue*, (impersonal.)

9. Revivre, *to revive* ; survivre, *to survive*.

10. Complaître, *to comply with* ; déplaire, *to displease*.

12. Contrefaire, *to counterfeit* ; défaire, *to undo* ; redéfaire, *to undo again* ; refaire, *to do again* ; satisfaire, *to satisfy* ; surfaire, *to exact*.

13. Distraire, *to divert* ; extraire, *to extract* ; rentrer, *to finedraw* ; soustraire, *to subtract*.

(The verbs distraire, &c. are used but in the future, conditional, and compound tenses.)

14. Apparaître, *to appear* ; comparaître, *to appear* ; disparaître, *to disappear* ; reparaitre, *to appear again*.

15. Méconnaître, *to disown, to forget* ; reconnaître, *to recognize, to acknowledge*.

16. Accroître, *to increase* ; décroître, *to decrease* ; recroître, *to grow again*.

17. Renaitre,* *to be born again, to be revived, to spring up*.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

| ENGLISH. | INFINITIVE PRESENT. | PART. PRES. | PART. PAST. | INDICATIVE PRESENT. | PRET. DEF. |
|----------------------|---------------------|-------------|-------------|---------------------|-------------|
| <i>to pickle</i> | 1 confi-re | SANT | -t | s-s-t, confis | -s |
| <i>to circumcise</i> | 2 circonci-re | | -s | s-s-t, circoncis | -s |
| <i>to suffice</i> | 3 suffi-re | | suffi | s-s-t, suffis | -s |
| <i>to say</i> | 4 di-re | | dit | s-s-t, disons | -s |
| <i>to curse</i> | 5 maudi-re | ssANT | -t | DITES, disent | -s |
| <i>to write</i> | 6 écri-re | VANT | -t | s-s-t, maudissons | |
| <i>to read</i> | 7 li-re | | lu | es-ent | |
| <i>to laugh</i> | 8 ri-re | | ri | s-s-t, écriv | -vis |
| <i>to drink</i> | 9 boi-re | | bu | s-s-t, lis | lus |
| <i>to conclude</i> | 10 conclu-re | -ANT | conclu | s-s-t, ri | -s |
| <i>to exclude</i> | 11 exclu-re | -ANT | exclu | bois s-s-t, buvons | bus |
| <i>to believe</i> | 12 croi-re | croYANT | exclus | -ex, boivent | |
| <i>to reduce</i> | 13 rédui-re | -sANT | crû | s-s-t, conclu | -s |
| <i>to join</i> | 14 joind-re | joignant | joint | s-s-t, exclu | -s |
| | | | | s-s-t, croy | crus |
| | | | | s-s-t, réduis | -sis |
| | | | | join-s-s-t, joign | joignis |
| | | | | | boive-es-e |
| | | | | | buvions-ies |
| | | | | | boivent |

DERIVATIVES OF THE ABOVE VERBS.

4. Redire, *to say again*.Contredire, *to contradict*; dédire, *to unsay*; interdire, *to forbid*; médire, *to slander*, and

- prédire, to foretell*, are entirely conjugated like *dire*, to say. But in the second person plural of the present indicative and imperative, they make *disex* instead of *dites* ; as, *vous contredisez*, &c.
6. *Circonscrire, to circumscribe* ; *décrire, to describe* ; *inscrire, to inscribe* ; *prescrire, to proscribe* ; *récrire, to write again* ; *souscrire, to subscribe* ; *transcrire, to transcribe*.
 7. *Elire, to elect*.
 8. *Sourire, to smile*.
 9. *Reboire, to drink again*.

The following verbs, although they are not derivatives from *REDUIRE*, to reduce, are conjugated like this verb.

Conduire, to conduct ; *construire, to construct* ; *cuire, to cook* ; *déduire, to deduct* ; *détruire, to distrust* ; *enduire, to do over, to lay on with* ; *induire, to induce* ; *instruire, to instruct* ; *introduire, to introduce* ; *reconduire, to reconduct* ; *reconstruire, to build again* ; *recuire, to Neal (metals)* ; *séduire, to seduce* ; *traduire, to translate*.

All the following verbs are conjugated like *JOINDRE*, to join, although they are not its derivatives.

Adjoindre, to associate ; *astreindre, to astringe* ; *atteindre, to attain* ; *ceindre, to gird* ; *conjoindre, to join together* ; *contraindre, to constrain, to compel* ; *craindre, to fear* ; *déjoindre, to disjoin* ; *dépeindre, to depaint* ; *déteindre, to lose its colour* ; *disjoindre, to disjoin, to part* ; *enfreindre, to infringe, to transgress* ; *enjoindre, to enjoin, to charge* ; *éteindre, to extinguish, to put out (fire)* ; *étreindre, to bind close* ; *feindre, to feign* ; *oindre, to oint* ; *peindre, to paint* ; *plaindre, to pity* ; *ratteindre, to catch again* ; *rejoindre, to join again* ; *repeindre, to paint again* ; *restreindre, to restrain* ; *reteindre, to die (to tinge) again* ; *réteindre, to extinguish again* ; *teindre, to die (to tinge)*.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Absoudre, to absolve, and *dissoudre, to dissolve*, are conjugated like *résoudre*, but they have neither preterit indicative, nor imperfect subjunctive. Their past participles are *absous, absoute, dissous, dissoute*.

Vaincre, to conquer, to vanquish, has its present participle *vainquant*, and the past *vaincu*, preterit *vainquis*. The other tenses have a regular formation, but the present and imperative are obsolete.

Convaincre, to convince, its derivative, is not used in the same tenses which are generally expressed by the passive way; *vous êtes convaincu*, we convince you.

Braire, to bray, is only used when speaking of asses, and in the following tenses and persons: *Il brait, ils braient, il braira, ils brairont, il brairait, ils brairaient*.

Forfaire, to trespass, and *malfaire*, to do ill, are only used in the infinitive or in the past participle, *soi fait, mal-fait*.

Repaître, to feed, to bait, is conjugated like *paraître*.

Luire, to shine, and *reluire*, to glitter, are conjugated like *réduire*; their past participles are *luis* and *reluis*, and their preterit IND. and imperfect SUB. are not in use.

Nuire, to hurt, is also conjugated like *réduire*; its past participle is *nui*; it has all its tenses.

Frîre, to fry, has its past participle *frit*, and is only used in the future and conditional, which are of a regular formation, and in the compound tenses. The tenses that are wanting are supplied by the verb *faire*, prefixed to the infinitive *frîre*; as, *je fais frîre, I fry, I get fried*.

Clore, to close, has only the past participle *clos*, and the future and conditional, which are of a regular formation.

Enclore, to enclose, its derivative, is only used in the same tenses.

Eclorre, to blow, speaking of flowers, is only used in the third person, and in the following tenses: IND. PRES. *il éclot, ils éclosent*, the future and conditional, which have a regular formation, and its subjunctive *qu'il éclore, qu'ils éclosent*. Its compound tenses, which are formed with *être*, are much used.

Accroire is only used in the infinitive, and preceded by *faire*; as, *faire accroire*, to impose upon credulity.

Poindre, to dawn, is only used in the present and future of the indicative; as, *il point, il poindra*.

CHAPTER VIII.

OF THE PARTICIPLE PREPOSITION, ADVERB, CONJUNCTION,
AND THE IMPERFECTION.

OF THE PARTICIPLE.

The participle is a part of speech which partakes of the

properties both of an adjective (as it generally performs its functions) and of a verb (as it has its signification.)

This part of speech will be explained in the second part of this grammar. However, it can be said here, that when an English participle present, comes after a preposition, it is in French expressed by the infinitive, except the preposition *be en*, in.

OF THE PREPOSITION.

The preposition, (so called from being prefixed to the word which it governs) serves to connect words with one another, and to show the relation between them.

Various explanations of the preposition will be found in the second part of this grammar. Two observations only will be made here.

The word which comes after a preposition, is called the objective to that preposition. Ex. *ce livre est POUR mon père*. That book is for my father. *Mon père* is the objective of the preposition *POUR*.

English prepositions govern the present participle, but French prepositions govern the present of the infinitive. Ex. *sans parler, without speaking*.

Many English verbs are followed by a preposition which determines their sense ; as, *to go OUT, to come IN, to meet WITH, to take OFF, &c.* These verbs and prepositions are generally translated in French by a word that answers for both ; as, *sortir, entrer, rencontrer, ôter, &c.* There are some, however, after which the preposition is expressed. It is only by consulting dictionaries, that these distinctions may be found out ; but as there are prepositions that are to be omitted, and about which the learner might be doubtful, it has been judged proper to mark these in italic in the following exercises :

OF THE ADVERB.

The adverb is a word which is joined to a verb, an adjective, and sometimes to another adverb, and which serves to modify these parts of speech, and to express some circumstances respecting them.

The French adverbs, except when they are interrogative, are always placed after the verbs, and in compound tenses, either before or after the auxiliary.

Almost all English adverbs ending in *ly*, and formed

from an adjective, generally correspond to a French adverb ending in *ment*, and also formed from the corresponding adjective. Ex. *présent*, *présentement*, *present*, *presently*.

Although this part of speech is fully illustrated in the second part of this work, and its different kinds thoroughly explained, yet a remark must be made here on adverbs of quantity, and a list of them placed here.

Adverbs of quantity require the preposition *de* to come after them, as it will be seen in the following list :

A LIST OF THE ADVERBS OF QUANTITY.

| | | | |
|-------------|------------------------|------------|-----------------------|
| Beaucoup de | <i>much</i> | Combien de | <i>how much</i> |
| | <i>many</i> | | <i>how many</i> |
| | <i>very much</i> | tant de | <i>so much</i> |
| | <i>a great deal of</i> | | <i>so many</i> |
| | <i>a great many</i> | autant de | <i>as o' so much</i> |
| | | | <i>as or so many</i> |
| | | | (used in comparison.) |
| trop de | <i>too much</i> | | |
| | <i>too many</i> | | |
| | | assez de | <i>enough</i> |
| peu de | <i>little</i> | plus de | <i>more</i> |
| | <i>few</i> | moins de | <i>less</i> |
| guère de | <i>but a little</i> | | |
| | <i>but a few</i> | | |

OF THE CONJUNCTION.

The conjunction is a word, which serves to connect words and sentences together.

There are various kinds of conjunctions, which require a longer explanation than can be given in this first part.

The word *that*, when a conjunction, is always expressed by *que*.

OF INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections are words, which serve to express a sudden emotion of the mind. Almost every feeling has an appropriate interjection.

EXERCISE.

ON THE PARTICIPLES, PREPOSITIONS, ADVERBS AND INTERJECTIONS.

Your master will not leave you, without explaining to you all these rules. The general abandoned the army, but only after having tried all his means. She seldom goes there without giving them your compliments. I will certainly pay you,

if I receive that money. He has often shown me those books, but he seldom lent them to me. He will not faithfully (1) keep his promises. I do not think that your brother will forgive your faults, if you donot give him your word, (2) that you will not offend him for the future. (3) Why do you sing? How are you? Alas! I am not well. Ho! my dear friend, do you think that I will betray you? How did they persuade you? Heavens! am I not unfortunate? Oh! forgive my boldness, and I will be forever grateful and submissive.

After the pupil has advanced thus far, I have always found it beneficial to allow him to write, occasionally, exercises of his own composition. To give him facility, however, in doing this, he should be familiar with the verbs. It is desirable that the sentences should be short, and contain little else than the difficulty which the learner wishes to overcome.

It is principally with the gallicisms that this method will be found useful.

(1) garder.

(2) parole. *f.*

(3) avenir.

PART II.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE SUBSTANTIVES.

Some substantives are used only in the singular and others only in the plural. This peculiarity arises from their being scarcely ever wanted in these respective numbers. They are generally the same both in English and French.

The following words, which often occur in conversation, are in different numbers in the two languages.

| | | | |
|---------------------|-------|---------------------|-------|
| avoine, | sing. | oats, | plur. |
| melons , | sing. | melons , | plur. |
| décombres, | plur. | rubbish, | sing. |
| épinards, | plur. | spinage, | sing. |
| funérailles, | plur. | funeral, | sing. |
| immondices, | plur. | filth, | sing. |
| progrès, | plur. | progress, | sing. |
| conseils, | plur. | advice, | sing. |
| cheveux, | plur. | hair | sing. |

The two last, though generally used in the plural, often occur in the singular number.

COMPOUND NOUNS.

French compound nouns are formed by two or three words either joined in one word or connected together by a hyphen; as, gentilhomme, *nobleman*; chien-marin, *sea-dog*. They do not always correspond in the two languages as well as in the above example. Some English compound nouns are rendered in French by single words, and single words by compound nouns.

Ex. Pompier, *fireman*
libraire, *bookseller*
cahier, *copy or writing-book*

petit-maitre, *dandy*
eau-de-vie, *brandy*
porte-huillier, *caster, &c.*

There is no other help than a dictionary to find them out ; as for those of the first example, they will not give the least difficulty. We will then only treat of the French compound nouns, whether they correspond with the English or not.

But there are many instances of English compound nouns expressed in French by separate words. New rules, fixing their arrangement and showing how to distinguish them, will be found with the articles.

OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF THE FRENCH COMPOUND NOUNS.

When a noun is compounded of a substantive and an adjective, they both take the sign of the plural ; as, *un gentilhomme*, a nobleman ; *des gentilshommes*, noblemen.

When a noun is compounded of two substantives, united by a preposition, the first only takes the sign of the plural ; as, *l'arc-en-ciel*, rainbow ; *des arcs-en-ciel*, rainbows.

When compounded of a preposition, or a verb and a substantive, the substantive alone is put in the plural ; as, *un entre-sol*, a low room, between two floors ; *un garde-fou*, (rails on bridges ;) pl. *des entre-sols*, *des garde-fous*.

If compounded of two words, the nature of which does not permit them to be changed, it never takes the sign of the plural ; as, *passe-partout*, watch key, or watch keys ; *passe-passe*, legerdemain, &c.

Some elliptical compound nouns, in which the plural sense falls on neither of the words, do not require any alteration in their plural, such as *tête-à-tête*, private conversation between two persons, &c.

Generally, the nature and signification of the compound words rule the orthography of the plural and even of the singular.

EXERCISE.

Why do you give my oats to your horses ? The ancestors of that man left him their gold and silver. My sister lost her scissors yesterday. When did you carry out (1) that rubbish ? Your spinage is not fresh. Will you go to that funeral ? They will take away (2) the filth of that alley. Your progress is slow, but solid. They did not despise my advice. That

(1) emporter. (2) enlever.

young lady (1) has a beautiful face; her eyes are blue, and her hair is dark. (2) Your brother-in-law gave two beautiful kites (3) to our well beloved nephew. The merchant's store has been robbed by three men. They had the blacksmith's false keys. Those dandies (4) went into the hall, but they were not free-masons. (5) Shut the sky-lights. The Tartars always form the scouts (6) of an army. The rapiers will arrive to-morrow evening. You have ten warming-pans in the house, why did you not warm my bed? They arrested the travellers, because they had not their passports. The soldiers drew up (7) the draw-bridges, and the game-keepers (8) did not enter. My silk-worms will completely succeed. (9.)

CHAPTER II.

OF THE ARTICLES.

In all languages, all equivocal expressions must be carefully avoided, and particularly in the French, which is distinguished by its clearness and perspicuity. In French, the extent of the signification of every substantive used in a sentence, ought always to be determined by some preceding word, and if there is no word to perform that office, an article should be used for that purpose.

Therefore, the French article will not only be considered as a *short word placed before a substantive, to indicate its gender and number*, but also as a word which determines the extent of its signification.

A new plan has been adopted in this grammar, which reduces the numerous difficulties on that part of speech, to a general principle, which will be explained and developed in this chapter.

All learners who have attempted to make themselves acquainted with the grammatical rules of this part of speech, must perceive the great difficulty of this subject. The obscure and unsatisfactory manner that it has been

(1) demoiselle. (2) noir. (3) cerf-volant. (*flying stag*.) (4) petit-maître. (5) franc-maçon. (6) avant-coureur. (7) lever. (8) garde-chasse. (9) réussir.

treated by Mr. Levizac in his comparative table, and other distinguished grammarians, indicates the necessity of pointing out the true principles of construction on which this part of speech depends.

GENERAL PRINCIPLE.

A substantive can only be used in a sentence, in one of the three following modes, viz. 1st, to denote a whole species of things, or a class of things; as, *MAN is subject to death; BIRDS fly; GREAT MEN are scarce; BLUE BIRDS are pretty, &c.* 2d. To denote a part of the species, or some individuals of the species, without any choice; as, *I have WINE; give me some BREAD; several LADIES; twenty DOLLARS, &c.*; and 3d. To denote a part of a species, or some individuals of a species, with a peculiar determination; as, *the WINE of that BOTTLE is good, but that BEER is very bad; your FATHER is here, &c.*

In the first instance, the substantive is used in a general sense, in which case it ought to be determined by the article *le, la, les*, although the English word takes no article.

Ex. *L'homme est sujet à LA mort*, man is subject to death; *LES oiseaux volent*, birds fly; *LES grands hommes sont rares*, great men are scarce, &c.

In the second case, the substantive has but a partitive sense, and must be determined by the partitive article,* whether it is expressed or not in English, unless there be some other word which performs the office of an article, as in the latter of the following sentences:

Ex. *J'ai DU vin*, I have wine; *donnez moi DU pain*, give me some bread; *avez-vous DE L'eau*, have you any water?

UN homme, a man; *AUCUN homme*, no man; *CHAQUE personne*, each person, every person; *PLUSIEURS dames*, several ladies; *TOUTE personne*, any person; *DIFFERENS livres*, different books; *DIVERS journaux*, various newspapers; *UN, DEUX, TROIS, CENT, MILLE hommes*, one, two, three, hundred, thousand men.

In the third case, the substantive is always determined by some words which correspond in the two languages,

* See the partitive article, page 24.

either the definite article *le, la, les*, or any of the demonstrative or possessive adjectives. Ex. *Le vin de CETTE bouteille est bon ; mais CETTE bière est très mauvaise*, the wine of that bottle is very good, but that beer is very bad ; *votre père est ici*, your father is here.

The two following general rules are corollaries from the above principle.

GENERAL RULE.

1. In French, a substantive which is not determined by any other preceding word, must be determined either by a definite or a partitive article, whether that article be expressed or not in English.

A method how to distinguish these articles will be found in this chapter; and the few cases in which they might be entirely omitted will be explained in the observations.

2d. When an article is expressed in English, it must be translated in French, by its corresponding article.

OBSERVATIONS. As this is laid down as a general rule, and as one of great importance to the learner, some illustrations will be given here on certain points that might be considered exceptions, although on closer examination it will be perceived that they depend upon the same principle. Those illustrations may appear long; but nothing must be spared that will enable the learner to comprehend clearly the rule. Many examples are introduced that do not present any difficulty, but it has been thought useful to put them in opposition to others.

There are some instances in the French language in which the article can be altogether suppressed.

1. In an emphatic and animated style, and when many substantives come together.

Ex. *Citoyens, étrangers, ennemis, peuples, rois, empereurs, le plaignent et le révérent. Citizens, enemies, strangers, people, kings, emperors, pity and respect him.*

It will be remarked that if in this arrangement the article is omitted before substantives, it is to impart elegance and force to the style. Still, even in this instance, the article might have been used, according to the strictest rules of grammatical propriety.

2. A substantive does not admit the article when it is

used as an apostrophe or interjection, as it is determined by the intention of the person who speaks.

Ex. Soldats ! soyez fermes. *Soldiers ! be firm.*

But if the substantive is used to call a parent or relation, it ought to be determined by the possessive adjective.

Ex. Mon père ! ma fille ! *Father ! daughter !*

EXERCISE.

The river carried away houses, flocks, trees, bridges, &c. General, officers, soldiers, all resisted with an admirable intrepidity. Nations ! praise the Lord ! Men ! celebrate his glory ! Sinners, tremble at his voice ! O eternal, thy clemency is great, and thy goodness infinite. O king of the earth and heaven, protect us. O celestial father, pardon my faults, and accept my repentance. Why do you not speak, brother John ? Are you sick ? Sister Mary ! have you my copy-book ? Farewell parents, friends, mountains, dales, woods and streams ! I leave you, perhaps, forever.

3. A word used as a title in writing, or in books, is considered as the proper name of the thing, and takes no article.

| | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| Ex. Grammaire Française, | composition, |
| <i>A French grammar.</i> | <i>the composition.</i> |

4th. The names of the days, when used to indicate time, either past or future, in which case they perform the functions of adverbs of time, require no article ; it is the same with the names of the months. They are considered as sufficiently determined by their own meaning. The English preposition *in*, which often precedes the latter, is always expressed by *en*, but *on* is omitted with the former, which take the article when not in the above case.

Ex. Je serai là lundi, *I will be there on Monday* ; Je partirai en Décembre, *I will set out in December* ; Je vais souvent au théâtre le jeudi, *I often go to the theatre on Thursdays.*

EXERCISE.

I will go *out* on Tuesday because I shall return that book on Thursday, and I wish to reassume my studies in September. I will show you how we put our titles in our French copy-books. The dictation ; the French verb ; the letter ; the composition, the parsing ; a list of the irregular verbs. I will show you the list of your father's books, Voltaire's romances, Boileau's poetry,

Franklin's essays, Funeral orations of Flechier, Amusing Fables, a Theoretical and Practical Grammar of the French tongue. I am sure that your uncle will not go to Baltimore in July this year. How do you spend (1) your week? I generally study on Monday; I ride (2) on Tuesdays, and go to see my friends on Wednesday or Friday.

5th. The words *monsieur* (pronounced *meusieu*), *messieurs*, *madame*, *mesdames*, *mademoiselle*, *mesdemoiselles*, require peculiar attention.

These French words have in English several corresponding words.

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| Ex. Monsieur Smith | <i>mister Smith</i> |
| monsieur Jean | <i>master John,</i> |
| monsieur! | <i>Sir!</i> |
| messieurs Brun, frères, | <i>M. M. Brown, brothers.</i> |
| messieurs! | <i>gentlemen! messieurs!</i> |
| madame Blanc, | <i>mistress White</i> |
| madame, | <i>madam! (a married lady.)</i> |
| mesdames, | <i>ladies! (in general)</i> |
| mademoiselle, | <i>miss, (any lady who is not married.)</i> |
| mesdemoiselles, | <i>young ladies, (when there is none of them married.)</i> |

When those words are preceded by an article or adjective, they drop the possessive adjective which is at the head of the word, except *monsieur* and *messieurs*, which always retain the possessive adjective. They have also a different meaning.

Ex. un monsieur, le monsieur, ce monsieur,
a gentleman, the gentleman, that gentleman.
 mon monsieur, votre monsieur, &c. *my master, your master, &c.* are sometimes used familiarly.

des messieurs, les messieurs, ces messieurs, nos messieurs.
some gentlemen, the gentlemen, these gentlemen, our gentlemen.
 une dame, la dame, cette dame, votre dame, &c.
a lady, the lady, that lady, your lady, &c.

It is the same now with the plural of *dame*, *lady*, and *demoiselle*, *young lady*, both in the singular and the plural.

These words, *monsieur*, *madame*, &c. are used in polite

conversation before nouns of title, when that title keeps the place of the name of the person ; and also, before the word designating some one of the family of the person to whom you speak.

| | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| Ex. monsieur le comte | messieurs les députés |
| <i>the earl</i> | <i>the deputies</i> |
| mad. la marquise, &c. | monsieur le docteur, |
| <i>the marchioness, &c.</i> | <i>doctor, &c.</i> |
| monsieur votre père | madame votre épouse |
| <i>your father</i> | <i>your wife</i> |
| mesdemoiselles vos sœurs, &c. | |
| <i>your sisters.</i> | |

EXERCISE.

I will go to that ball with two ladies, and I think that they will receive me. A gentleman of my acquaintance went yesterday to Brooklyn, and met, in the steam-boat, your father and sister. I have been introduced (1) to that gentleman ; he was with his lady. How are you, doctor ? I am very well, I thank you, sir ; but how is your mother ? young ladies ! I hope that you will not forget these important things. Where are you going to place your ladies ? Those gentlemen will give them their seats. A young lady was singing that song last night (2) at my father's house. The lady who spoke to you yesterday, was this morning with the young lady who has sent you her album. Do you wish to go to London ? Yes, captain, I will go in your ship, and those young ladies will accompany me. Did you meet a lady or a gentleman ?

6. Proper names of men require no article, when they are sufficiently determined by the word itself.

Ex. Phocion était l'ami d'Alexandre,
Phocion was the friend of Alexander.

But should you want to express any particular person, having the same name, or should the proper name be preceded by an adjective, the article must be used to make the determination complete.

Ex. L'Alexandre du nord, *The Alexander of the north.*
Le jeune Pierre, *Young Peter.*

7. A name of dignity or title must be determined by the article *le, la, les*, although followed by the proper name, in which case it is omitted in English.

Ex. Le Général Washington. *General Washington.*

(1) présenter. (2) hier soir.

EXERCISE.

Cæsar was a great captain. The name of that man is Andrew; but he is not the Andrew who had been my servant; that Andrew has gone to Rome with that Peter, who was his intimate friend. Marshall Lannes was the friend of General Bonaparte. Young Louis was poisoned in his prison. Queen Mary was celebrated and unhappy. King Richard went to the Holy Land. Admiral B. was the victim of his enemies. King Alfred expelled the Danes. Doctor Johnson was the author of the Rambler. Cardinal Woolsey was too ambitious. I spoke to Colonel James before the battle. Major N. announced to me the death of General Wolf.

8. Proper names of cities take no article, except a very few, the name of which is derived from common substantives.

Ex. Paris, Londres, Le Hâvre. *Paris, London, Havre.*

Proper names of empires, kingdoms, states, and the four quarters of the world, take the article *le, la, les*, when it is spoken of the whole country.

Ex. La France est un pays délicieux,
France is a delightful country.

But it is omitted if the idea is limited to a certain part of the country, in which case the following remark will be applied:

The prepositions *to* and *in* are translated in French by *en*, before the proper names of empires, kingdoms, &c. while they are always expressed by *à* before the name of a city. *From* is rendered by *de*.*

Ex. Je demeure à Paris; il va en Italie; il vient de Dublin.
I live in Paris; he goes to Italy; he comes from Dublin.

Names of mountains, rivers, winds, and many islands, and distant countries, are always used with the article.

Ex. Le Vésuve, le Gange, l'aquilon, la Corse,
Vesuvius, the Ganges, the north wind, Corsica.

We also say, in some circumstances, *Le mont Vésuve, le mont parnasse, le fleuve du Tage, &c.*

* There is another instance in which the article may be omitted. The rule is extensive in its application, and will be spoken of hereafter.

EXERCISE.

Italy is the garden of Europe. France is separated from Spain by the Pyrenees, and from Italy by the Alps. Europe is bounded on (1) the north by the Frozen ocean; on the south by the Mediterranean sea; on the east by Asia, and on the west by the Atlantic ocean. The principal rivers are the *Volga*, the *Don*, the *Boristhenes*, in Muscovy, the *Danube*, the *Rhine*, and the *Elbe*, in Germany; the *Vistula*, in Poland; the *Loire*, the *Seine*, the *Rhone*, and the *Garonne*, in France; the *Ebro*, the *Tagus*, and the *Douro*, in Spain; the *Po*, in Italy; the *Thames* and the *Severn*, in England; and the *Shannon*, in Ireland. The principal mountains are the *Darne Fields*, between Norway and Sweden; *Mount Crapel*, between Poland and Hungary. The Pyrenean mountains between France and Spain, and the Alps between France and Italy. The west wind (2) arrives towards the middle of the day and tempers the heat of summer. My father is gone to Havre; he had some business in France, and will live (3) two months in Paris; then he will go to London with my uncle who resides in Edinburgh and will send him his sons. If you go to Italy, I will accompany you. Perhaps I shall go to Martinique or to Havana.

9. The following observations may, also, with propriety, be introduced here. The preposition *to* is expressed in French by *de* before nouns expressing *alliance*, *consanguinity*, &c.; in short, whenever it may be in English expressed by *of* in the same circumstances.

Ex. Le Général Eugène, frère de la Reine. *General Eugene, brother to the Queen.*

To is also translated by *de* before a proper name of country or city, when preceded by the word *road* or *way*.

Ex. Nous sommes sur la route de Londres. *We are on the way to London.*

EXERCISE.

Mr. John, brother to your neighbor, was with Miss Jenny, niece to General W. Do you not think that Mr. Henry, perfumer to the princess, is very rich? The heir to the crown of Portugal was the Prince of Brazil. I am a friend to Colonel James' sons. We went to Philadelphia, where we found the way to

(1) à. (2) Zéphyr. (3) Demeurer.

Charleston. I will go to Jamaica in the steam-boat. They were on their road to Albany. She knew the path to her cottage.

10. When one substantive is used after another, and they both represent the same person or thing under a different appellation, the second is considered as sufficiently determined by the first, and requires no article, whether there be one or not in English. Their connection is even so intimate, that the second is used as an adjective to the first, which entirely determines the suppression of the article.

Ex L'Empressé, comédie.

The Busy-body, a comedy.

Connaissez-vous Monsieur Pierre, le Tailleur?

Do you know Mr. Peter, the Tailor?

Saturne, père de Jupiter.

Saturn, the father of Jupiter.

The same rule would be observed should the two substantives be separated by the verb *être*, to be, or *devenir*, to become, to turn, *être fait*, to be made, and others of this kind, since with these verbs both the preceding and following nouns are merely the same person or thing under a different appellation.

Ex. Alexandre était fils de Philippe,

Alexander was the son of Philippus.

Il est tailleur, *he is a tailor.*

Ces hommes sont étrangers, *These men are strangers.*

EXERCISE.

We assisted at the representation of the Misanthrope, a comedy by (1) Molière. Mr. Smith, a merchant, is very sick. I selected several pieces; Cinna, a tragedy, The soldier's Return, a song, and Waverly, a novel. My uncle is a bookseller, and his son is a poet. Miss M., the daughter of the constable, was here yesterday; she is a singer. That man is an Italian and his wife is a German; he is a Catholic and she is a Protestant. Her sister is a widow and her brother-in-law a bachelor (2) My brother is a captain but he will be made a colonel. Juno was the sister of Jupiter. I am the son of Isaac and the brother of Esau. Queen Blanche, the mother of Saint Louis, was very pious. Indians! we are Englishmen, but you are soldiers, and you will respect our misfortune. We are mothers and we easily

(1) de. (2) Garçon.

forgive the faults of our children. They will become orphans by the death of their father. Frederick forgot a moment that he was a philosopher and acted as a monarch. Kings often forget that they are men.

When there is no connection between the first and second substantive, the article will be prefixed to the latter substantive. This occurs in the following instances :

1st. When the second substantive, instead of being the same object as the first, expresses some imaginary being, or some other object that we compare to the first, the article is then required.

Ex. Cet homme est *un* Hercule. *That man is a Hercules*
Ces demoiselles sont *des* beautés. *These young ladies are beauties.*

2nd. When the second noun is followed by another word to which it is restricted, or by some prepositions of which it becomes the subject, or accompanied by an adjective that qualifies it.

Ex. Jean est *un* homme d'un grand mérite. *John is a man of a great merit.*
Mr. Pierre est *un* tailleur qui travaille très-bien, *Mr. Peter is a tailor who works very well.*
Mon frère deviendra *un* grand poète. *My brother will become a great poet.*

REMARK. In an emphatic style the article may be suppressed in the last instance, although it is not wrong to use it.

Ex. Il fut bon père, bon époux. *He was a good father, a good husband.*

EXERCISE.

Bayard was a hero. Your creditor is a Turk, since he prosecutes you thus. (1.) That woman is a fury, and her husband a Socrates. That poor little girl is a lamb, who endures your ill treatment with an incomparable sweetness. The ministers are vampires who suck the blood of the nation. I am an unhappy merchant, ruined by the last war. I am a Spaniard of an illustrious family. Edward was an unfortunate prince. Our soldiers will be heroes since our generals are Turennes. That

young man will become a remarkable painter; his brother is already an excellent sculptor, and his father was an architect renowned for his great genius.

11. Respecting sentences, constructed with the verb to be, when used in the third person, and having a personal pronoun for its nominative, as *he is a general*, the following remark should be made.

Sentences of this kind may be expressed in two different ways.

Il est général, or C'est un général.

In the first of these examples, which falls under the 10th observation,* the word *général*, is a mere adjective to the pronoun *il*, which supposes that the person represented by the pronoun is well known, or has been made known. In the second, the word *général*, preceded by the article *un*, is a substantive which expresses by itself both the person and the quality, and does not require that the person should be known before; the word *ce* or *c'*, is a demonstrative adjective, which points out the person. Thus, if I only intend to mention some distinctive characteristic of an individual who is known, I will say *il est général*; but if I speak of a person who is not known, and to whom I wish to give a name by the title of general, I should say, *C'est un général*.

This will become more intelligible, if it is compared to an English sentence of a similar construction. My servant, speaking of his father will say: *Il est charretier*, he is a carter; but if I ask him who knocked at the door, he will answer in English, *it is a cartman*, and in French, *c'est un charretier*. In the former instance I know the person he is speaking of, but I do not in the latter.

The only difference is, that in French those sentences are more frequently used than in English, as will be seen under the head of the verb être, to be. However, in order to assist the learner in determining which of these ways to choose, the following rules must be observed:

The English personal pronoun, *he, she, or they*, is expressed in French by the demonstrative adjective *ce* or *c'*.

* See the example, *il est tailleur*? is he a tailor?

and the following substantive preceded by the article whenever we wish to designate an individual profession or other distinctive characteristics, by his title, instead of his proper name.

It is important to remark, that when the word *ce* or *c'* is used; it always requires that the article be expressed before the following noun, because the word without an article, should be considered as an adjective, and this would be improper, as there is no other substantive in the sentence; and by a similar principle, when the following noun is preceded by an article, according to any of the foregoing rules, it requires that the nominative pronoun, if there be one in the sentence, should be expressed by *ce* or *c'*.

EXERCISE.

I wish to know that gentleman. He is a Frenchman, and he will speak French to me. I will introduce you to that lady; she is a widow and her sister is a nun. She is an accomplished woman, and my brother has assured me that she is an excellent musician. Mr. P. is here; have you not spoken to him? That name is unknown to me. He is a merchant from Savannah. Oh! yes, I think he is a particular friend to Mr. J. He is a man who receives all his countrymen with a rare goodness. Is he not a German? No, sir, he is a Spaniard. Peter has lost all his money, but he is a fool, because he has really been robbed by those men. He is a gambler and I think that he deserves that little punishment. Do you not perceive that man who is passing before that house? No, sir. He is the painter who has drawn my sister's likeness. Why do you not speak to those ladies? They are Italian. No, sir, they are French. The gentlemen who brought (1) them here spoke English to my wife, but they are Spaniards.

12. Before we pass definitively to the general rule, a last observation is indispensable.

The indefinite article *a* or *an* is expressed in French by the definite article *le*, *la*, *les*, before nouns of measure, weight and purchase.

Ex. *Trois sous la livre.* *Three cents a pound.*

When speaking of time it is rendered by the preposition *par*, without an article.

Dix piastres par semaine. *Ten dollars a week.*

EXERCISE.

He will work in your shop for fifty cents a day, but he wishes to have ten dollars a week in two or three months. I will not give you my cheese for ten cents a pound. The butcher asked me seven pence a pound for his veal. My father goes to Boston six or seven times (1) a year, and does not spend in his journey three dollars a day. I will give you three lessons a week. I will not buy these oats if the man has fixed the price at fourteen shillings a bushel. That silk cost me five shillings a yard. I bought those books for six cents a volume. He sells his wine for two francs a bottle. Those engravings are cheap at ten cents a piece.

The definite article *a* or *an* is suppressed in French after the exclamatory pronoun, *what*; as *what a beauty! quelle beauté?* with the pronoun *such*, it is placed before instead of being after.

Ex. *Such a man.*

Un tel homme.

An exercise on these phrases will be given with these pronouns under the head of indefinite pronouns.

APPLICATION OF THE GENERAL RULE ON THE ARTICLE.

Any substantive that will not fall under any of the preceding exceptions, will be used according to the general rule.

As it is said in that rule, that the article ought to be definite or partitive, a method will be given here how to distinguish them.

RULE. The definite article is prefixed to a noun which is understood in a general sense, and means the whole species, or a class of individuals of the species, or some definite part of the species, but always in the general sense.

Ex. *L'Or est précieux,* *Gold is precious (gold in general,)*
J'aime les chevaux gris, *I like grey horses (in general,)*
Les mauvais livres sont dangereux, *Bad books are dangerous (bad books in general.)*

The partitive article is used before a noun which means some part of a species, some individuals of a class, some parts of a definitive kind. It is therefore used when the partitive article *some*, or *any* is expressed or can be understood in English.

Ex. Du pain et du fromage *Bread and cheese composed our*
 composèrent notre dinner.
 dîner.

The learner will easily understand that our dinner was composed of *SOME bread* and *SOME cheese*, and not with all the bread and cheese in the world.

| | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| J'achetterai des chevaux | <i>I will buy grey horses (some</i> |
| gris, | <i>grey horses.)</i> |
| Il a de la bière excellente. | <i>He has excellent beer (some</i> |
| | <i>beer.)</i> |

Thus, by analogy, if I had the two following sentences to translate: *I blame imprudence, he has courage*, I would say, *Je blâme l'imprudence; Il a du courage*. In the first instance, I blame *imprudence* in general; any thing that is *imprudent*; there is no *imprudence* that I do not blame. In the second, he has not *courage* in general, but his own *courage*, for should that word mean all that is *courage*, no body but he would have *courage*.

EXERCISE.

Misery is the consequence of crime. Friendship is the tie (1) of society. Give praise to merit and contempt to vice. Actions are the proofs of intentions. Soldiers have bread and meat. Sleep is the image of death. A wise man desires to distinguish truth from falsehood. That child has bread and butter; but have you given him cider and water? I praise courage but I blame rashness. If you go to the battery, bring me some pies, for I like sweetmeats and cakes. Bread and water were my food for (2) three months. I hate idleness. The king protects innocence. The president defends liberty. I shall repress insolence. Have patience and you will succeed (3.) That lady will acquire here gracefulness and amiability. Do you buy books and pamphlets? I will give you glasses, and you will taste our wine. Skill is very useful in this world, but audacity very

often succeeds, while merit remains unnoticed. Do you eat strawberries? No, madam; I am eating mulberries. I thought that you did not like fruit. Yes, I eat fruit two or three times a week. We will buy butter to-morrow, but we will weigh the jar before, because the grocer often gives us six pounds instead of seven. I find your beer very good; but after all I prefer cider.

REMARK. The following expressions might perhaps present some difficulty. It will be observed, however, that they always take the article in French, according to the general rule, viz. *at church*, *to church*, à l'église; *at market*, *to market*, au marché; *to auction*, *at auction*, à l'encan; *at school*, *to school*, à l'école; *to war*, à la guerre, and other expressions of the same kind.

To prison, or *in prison*, is generally translated by *en prison*; *to bed*, preceded by the verb *to go*, is expressed by the verb *se coucher*, *to lay down*, as, *he goes to bed*, il va se coucher.

The article, according to the general rule, is always prefixed to these expressions of time: *next year*, *last year*, *month*, *week*. L'année prochaine, l'année passée le mois prochain, la semaine dernière, &c.

But the names of *months* and *days* do not take the article according to the rule, page 99.

EXERCISE.

I was at school this morning before my sister. I bought these books at auction, but I will not carry them to school, because they would be soiled. My mother will go to church next week, but she is not well to-day. She was sick last year. We will go to the country next month. Did you not go the ball last Monday? You mean last Tuesday? Yes, I did go, and I will go to the theatre next month. The constable took (1) him to prison. Why does he go to bed now? I will go to England next year, because our partner will arrive from London next September.

REMARK. The use of the definite article is now thoroughly explained; but some difficulties remain on the partitive article, which will be treated of in the following rules. The learner will observe, that, as these rules relate

(1) Mener.

specially to the partitive article, they must never be applied to any substantive which is used in a general sense.

RULES ON THE PARTITIVE ARTICLES.

The partitive article is expressed in French by the preposition *de*, alone, without *le*, *la*, *les*, when it comes immediately before an adjective or before any adverb followed by an adjective.

| | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Ex. j'ai de bon papier, | <i>I have good paper.</i> |
| nous achetterons de bonnes plumes | <i>we will buy good pens.</i> |
| Elle a de très-belles robes, | <i>she has very handsome dresses.</i> |

Without alluding to the numerous observations of many grammarians on this subject, we shall consider this as a mere exception to the general rule, or rather as one of the rules on the partitive article. All reasonings, the object of which is to compare the French language to itself, must be unsatisfactory to the English pupils.

N. B. In the following exercises, instances, both of the definite and partitive article before an adjective, must be intermixed, so as to oblige the learner to distinguish them.

EXERCISES.

Why would you not buy good apples? Why would you eat bad fruit? My cousin wears handsome dresses. My sister has excellent silk, and she is going to make beautiful aprons. He related to us frightful stories. The opinion of ancient Philosophers was different from the sentiment of modern philosophers. A simple Crown (1) is, in that happy region, the reward of good actions. I accompanied on Monday night some very amiable ladies. That man has true friends in this country. He does not owe large sums; but he has unmerciful creditors. We perceived at a great distance high towers and large trees. Spaniards wear large hats and long swords. That man has wicked children. I read the works of good authors. The consequence of great passions is the blindness of the mind and the corruption of the heart. She has received rich presents, but she has done (2) great services.

REMARK. These expressions, *des petits-matres*, dandies; *des beaux-fils*, sons-in-law; *des bas-reliefs*, basso-relievos, &c. are not exceptions to this rule, because those words are compound nouns, in which the adjective becomes a part of

(1) Couronne. (2) Rendre.

the substantive itself, and cannot be considered as an adjective.

Some grammarians pretend that in the singular number both the preposition and article are to be expressed before an adjective when it is alluded to some particular kind of the qualified substantive. Thus they say,

De la bonne bière good beer (some good beer I allude to.)

De bonne bière, good beer (in general.)

Whether this distinction be useful or not, I do not pretend to decide. However, as it depends entirely on the intention of the person who speaks, no exercise can be given on it. At all events it is more prudent for the learner to use merely the preposition *de*, without the article.

RULE. After a negative verb the partitive article is expressed by the preposition *de*, alone, without *le, la, les*.

Ex. *Je n'ai pas de livres. I have not any books.*

But should the verb be interrogative and negative together, then the partitive article would follow the general rule, and be expressed as usual.

Ex. *N'avez-vous pas des amis? Have you not any friends?*

N. B. Sometimes an English negative verb is expressed by the negative *no* placed between the verb and the following substantive, but the French verb must be put in the negative in the same way as above.

Ex. *Je n'ai pas de livres. I have no books.*

EXERCISE.

I will not buy any fruit this year because fruit is unwholesome. And I have eaten no cherries to-day. Have you not eaten some strawberries? Will you not give him some commission for Pittsburg? No, Sir, I will give him no letters, because I have no business with that country. Has he not obtained favors from the king? I have written no exercise to-day. Will you not write some verb for to-morrow? Yes, but I shall not write any composition, because I have no time. She did not sing French songs yesterday. Did she not sing Spanish ballads? They do not sell jewellery in that store. Do they not sell rings and necklaces? Your sisters do not wear black hats. Have you not been gathering flowers? I want no meat to-day, because I am not very well. My father has no servant. That captain has no crew. That book seller has no French books.

GENERAL RULE ON THE USE OF THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

There are instances in which the partitive article is entirely omitted; this happens when a word in a partitive sense comes after the preposition *de*, either governed by the preceding word, or required to connect the two substantives together.

Ex. *plein d'eau, full of water.*
une marque de vertu, a mark of virtue.

The reason of this rule is very simple. The preposition *de* is, in these phrases, strictly necessary to connect the words together, and cannot be suppressed by any means. Then, if the partitive article be prefixed to the following word, it would produce a disagreeable repetition of the word *de*; as,

plein de de l'eau ; une marque de de la vertu.

It may be said that one *de* could be easily suppressed; that is true. But if the *de* suppressed be the first one, the words would have no connection; as,

| | | | |
|--------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| <i>plein</i> | <i>de l'eau</i> | <i>une marque</i> | <i>de la vertu</i> |
| <i>full</i> | <i>some water</i> | <i>a mark</i> | <i>some virtue</i> |

If the second *de* be suppressed, the article would cease to be partitive; as,

| | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>plein de</i> | <i>l'eau</i> | <i>une marque de</i> | <i>la vertu</i> |
| <i>full of</i> | <i>the water</i> | <i>a mark of</i> | <i>the virtue</i> |

Therefore, to obviate this double inconvenience, the article is omitted.

Grammarians attribute to another cause the suppression of the article. They say that the word is used in an indeterminate sense, and therefore requires no word to fix its determination. We will, in going on, examine this opinion.

The different rules on this article will corroborate each other.

The partitive article can succeed any other prepositions, even *d*. *En*, *in*, and *sans*, without, ~~are~~ excepted, for reasons which will be hereafter explained.

Ex. *Avec des dames with some ladies.*
pour de l'argent for some money.
à des enfans to some children.

N. B. The prepositions *with* and *about*, which are governed by many verbs, participles, or adjectives, are generally expressed in French by *de*.

It is to be observed, that if the two words can be connected either by the preposition *de*, or any other, the partitive article will be omitted if *de* is used, but expressed with any other preposition.

Ex. Ces fruits étaient couverts **DE** paille.

Ces fruits étaient couverts **AVEC DE LA** paille.

These fruits were covered with straw.

This will prove that the article is suppressed on account of the preposition *de*, and not because the word is undetermined. For, in both sentences, any one will see nothing but *fruits covered with straw*, and I do not know how the straw should be more determined in the latter than in the former example, since their meaning is exactly the same.

The rule of the partitive article, suppressed after *de*, is general, and can be applied in all sentences in which *of*, or any other preposition, translated in French by *de*, is used in English, and also if *de* is required in French and not in English.

EXAMPLES.

Vous me parlez toujours **DE** choses agréables,

You always speak to me of agreeable things.

Donnez moi de l'or au lieu d'argent,

Give me gold instead of silver.

Je vous ai beaucoup d'obligations,

I have many obligations to you

GENERAL REMARK. Should the preposition *de* govern several substantives, it must be repeated before every one.

APPLICATION OF THE ABOVE RULES.

As adverbs of quantity govern the preposition *de*, the words which follow, will be written after that preposition without an article.

Ex. J'ai beaucoup de livres. *I have many books.*

Bien, much, many, by an exception which cannot be explained, requires both the preposition and article to be expressed after it; as, *bien de la peine*, much trouble.

Plusieurs, several, being an indefinite pronoun, and able to determine the substantive by itself, must not be placed amongst the adverbs of quantity, nor be used with the partitive article; as, *plusieurs personnes*, several persons.

Jamais, never, which requires the verb to be in the negative, is followed by the preposition *de*, when it is before a substantive; as,

Je n'ai jamais d'argent. I never have money.

The negative adverbs *no more*, *not any more*, are expressed by *plus de*, when followed by a substantive.

Assez, enough, is in French prefixed to the substantive, as all adverbs of quantity; as, *vous avez assez d'argent*, you have money enough.

EXERCISE.

How many children have you? I have not many boys, but I have several girls. I do not owe you so much money. Give me a little wine with much water. Do you wish to eat a few apples? They had no more bread. The princesses have very handsome jewels with many diamonds. I saw so many persons in that room that I was frightened. I will spend less money, and I will buy more books. How does he join so much pride to so much ignorance? How much paper do you consume in a day? That actress has a better voice, but she has less success. You give me too many potatoes and too much beef, I never shall eat so much meat. Have you enough bread? Yes, sir, but I have not salt enough. He never will have friends. The servant never buys cucumbers when she goes to market. I have no more beer. Their soldiers had no more powder and they stopped. He will not succeed if he has but little money and few resources.

EXERCISE,

On the partitive article being suppressed in French after the preposition *de*.

Recollect that when the preposition *of*, ~~which~~ ^{which}, or *about*, is governed by an adjective, a verb, or a participle, it is expressed in French by *de*. Besides these many others are in some instances expressed in French by *de*, viz. in the following exercise, *by*, *upon*, *from*.

That painter sold a large quantity of pictures at auction last week, and purchased a small number of engravings. Your paper is covered with stains and your fingers are black with ink.

I informed him that I would send him a basket of fruit, and a bag of nuts. He is really satisfied with things which would be blamed by connoisseurs. The queen gave to General B. a handsome box enriched with diamonds. Those meadows enamelled with flowers and crossed by streams in different directions were spoiled by a pack of dogs belonging to a troop of sportsmen. The sky is glittering (1) with stars. The highways are bordered with laurels, pomegranates, and jessamines. The fleets of Solomon, under the conduct of the Phenicians, made (2) frequent voyages to the land of Ophir and Tharsis, and returned (3) laden with gold, silver, ivory, and precious stones. The soldiers died from cold and hunger. I should die from fear. See that woman swoln with pride, living upon flattery! She wears a dress, shining with gold, and adorned with flowers. On her head is a magnificent diadem, surmounted with jewels. (4) She is surrounded by flatterers and overwhelmed with compliments and homages. Is she not worthy of pity? We perceived the summit of the Alps covered with snow. A company of grenadiers will suffice for that expedition. That heap of money belongs to that financier, and this pile of books to that poor author. My dress will be trimmed with velvet and embroidered with silk. Why did you unjustly accuse me of faults which are unpardonable?

The substantive which succeeds the preposition *of*, and is used to qualify the first substantive, or to complete its sense, may also be considered as being in a partitive sense, and will follow the preceding rule; as, *un homme de mérite*, *a man of merit*, *a man of some merit*.

English adjectives used to mean nations are not always translated in French by their corresponding adjective; but, particularly when not connected to men, they are expressed by the name of the country preceded by the preposition *of*. Therefore, that proper name performing the office of an adjective, shall not, in this case, take the article.

Ex. *Le vin de France. French wine.*

EXERCISE.

French cloth is very good. That gold smith melts Spanish

(1) *parsemé*. (2) (3) *imperfect*. (4) *bijou m. s.*

dollars and French crowns. (1) That musician has received Italian strings and Naples oil. Do you like French sweet oil? Champaign wine is excellent. You are a man of principles. She is a lady of excellent manners. Is he not a man of knowledge? That day of glory was crowned with complete success. She is a model of wisdom. Burgundy wine is very dear. Charles is the king of France. We admired the fine sky of Italy. Do you wish to have a cup of tea, or a glass of wine?

The above general rule on the partitive article, is applied in all cases when a substantive is used to qualify another.

ON SOME ENGLISH COMPOUND NOUNS.

RULE. In many English sentences, this substantive is so well identified with an adjective, that it is placed before the noun which it qualifies, particularly when it expresses its *matter, nature, dependance, or quality*; as, *a gold chain, a river fish, a silver watch*. The French language does not permit two substantives to be thus reversed; but the one which is employed to qualify the other, must be placed after it, as in the above rules, and connected to it by the preposition *de*, or sometimes *en*, when it means the *matter*; as, *une chaîne d'or, un poisson de rivière. Une montre en argent*.

EXERCISE.

I have a gold ring and a silver watch. My sister has a coral necklace and a pair of pearl ear rings. My father gave her, yesterday, a handsome straw hat, and a silk dress. Their friend Alice sent to her, from Philadelphia, a pair of buckskin gloves, because she had given her, when she was in New-York, a handsome prayer-book, with a morocco binding. (2) We have silver spoons and steel knives. Our host gave us sea-fishes and goat milk for our breakfast. That gentleman wears a beaver hat. Why did you give me a kitchen knife, instead of a table knife? Lend me a sheet of letter paper. I will borrow, for that ball, a velvet hat and a lace veil. She has received a silver medal. The servant has lost the cellar key.

REMARK. Should, however, this mode of expression be always translated according to the foregoing rule, it would sometimes lead to much equivocation. For instance, if I should translate a tea-cup by *une tasse de thé*, there would

(1) écu m. s.

(2) Reliure.

be, in French, no distinction between *a tea cup* and *a cup of tea*. It is evident that a distinction should be made.

Nothing remains to be said in translating English substantives in French, connected by the preposition *of* (see the rule, page 113;) as, *a cup of tea*, *une tasse de thé*; but since the French substantive, which is used to qualify another, must be placed after it, and not before, as in English, and the relation between them is expressed by a preposition, if their relation be different, the equivocation can only be prevented by changing the preposition.

For instance, when I say *a tea cup*, the word *tea*, prefixed to *cup*, indicates the destination of the cup; and the preposition *a*, of which the principal use is to express destination, is used in such a case to connect the two substantives.

Ex. *une tasse à thé*.

Sometimes the word which qualifies the other, expresses not only its destination, but the presence of the thing used as a qualification to it. For instance, if I ask for *the tea canister*, I mean both the canister and the tea. In such a case, the preposition *a*, which expresses destination, is accompanied by the article to point out or determine the second substantive; as, *La boîte au thé*.

It is to be remarked that when the expression does not admit of equivocation, the preposition *de* is used in preference; as, *un bonnet de nuit*, a night cap; *un orgue d'église*, a church organ, &c.

EXERCISE.

My brother wants a cup of coffee, but I have no coffee cups. He will dip his wheat bread in rye coffee. Instead of conveying his wheat to a water mill, he went to a wind mill. I have a handsome tea table in my eating room, and a flower-pot on my window. When he went to the powder mill he left his shoes at the door. We have large tea spoons and small soup spoons. Give him a glass of wine. Bring the wine glasses. My brother will show you his air (1) gun. Take away (2) the milk-pot and the cream basin. Go to the wine-cellar and bring us the vinegar bottle. I met *with* the butter boy. I do not ask *for* a money bag, I ask *for* a bag of money. I live in the hay market. Hand me the mustard-pot, the pepper box, and the oil bottle. Shall I offer you some ice-cream?

(1) vent.

(2) emporter.

Another difficulty remains to be explained.

In English, a word prefixed to another, being considered as an adjective, does not take the sign of the plural, although its signification should be plural; as, *a ten dollar note*; but in French a substantive always takes the sign of the plural, if its sense will admit it; as, *un billet de dix dollars*.

Thus, the phrase, *Soap and Candle Manufactory*, will be translated by *manufacture de Savon et de Chandelles*.

EXERCISE.

Have you been to that shoe-store? I lent him a five dollar bill, but he has not yet returned me the money. That chair manufacturer (1) owes me a large sum of money. The book seller who lives opposite, is my cousin, and the music-seller, who is talking with him, is his brother-in-law. His uncle keeps (2) an oil store. That young man is a card engraver. He was a sign painter. I am going to the cigar manufactory, because I have no good segars. He is a milk-man, (3) but he was an oyster-man.

REMARK. There are sentences in which a substantive is expressed without an article, either after a verb or after a preposition. These two words thus joined perform the office of a word which is wanting in our language, or that it seems more elegant to express by a circumlocution. This substantive does not require an article, because it is joined to that verb or preposition merely to make sense with that word, and cannot be understood more under a general than in a partitive sense. Thus we say,

Prendre congé, *to take leave*. Avec rage, *with rage*, because we have no single word to express these ideas; but we say,

Donner permission, *to give permission*,
Avec courage, *with courage*,

although our idea would be fully expressed by the words *permettre*, to permit, and *courageusement*, courageously. It may be easily perceived in the latter instance, that the substantive, together with the verb or preposition, expresses but a single idea, since this idea can be expressed by a

(1) fabricant. (2) tenir. (3) marchand.

single word. This will be applied to the former phrases on account of their analogy with the latter.

Examples on this remark will be given in an appropriate article with the verbs and prepositions; and some few instances of the suppression of the article before a substantive, in similar circumstances, will be explained under the head of the parts of speech with which they occur.

CHAPTER III.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

The difficulties on the formation of the feminine and the plural of French adjectives have been thoroughly explained in the first part. Some thing remains to be said on the place of adjectives.

It is not always indifferent to place an adjective before or after the noun. In some instances, an adjective has two different significations, which are determined by its place.

A List of these adjectives is given in the following sentences.

Une BRAVE homme

a good man

une COMMUNE voix

a unanimous voice

un FURIEUX menteur

an excessive liar

un GALANT homme

a clever man

un GRAND homme

a great man

un HONNETE homme

an honest man

un MALHONNETE homme

a dishonest man

une MECHANTE épigramme

a miserable epigram

un NOUVEAU livre

a new book; another book

Un homme BRAVE

a brave man

une voix COMMUNE

a common voice

un Lion FURIEUX

a furious Lion

un homme GALANT

a man who is complaisant to the ladies

un homme GRAND

a tall man

un homme HONNETE

a polite man

un homme MALHONNETE

an impolite man

une épigramme MECHANTE

a wicked epigram

un NOUVEAU

a book lately published

UN PAUVRE AUTEUR
an author without merit
 UN PLAISANT HOMME
a whimsical ridiculous man
 UN PETIT HOMME
a small man

UN AUTEUR PAUVRE
an author without fortune
 UN HOMME PLAISANT
an agreeable merry man
 UN HOMME PETIT
a mean man

2d REMARK. Generally, when two adjectives qualify the same substantive, they must be placed after the noun and connected together by the conjunction *et*, which, in such a case, is always required in French.

Ex. C'est un livre long et ennuyeux.
It is a long tedious book.

If the adjectives be two of those that are to be used before the noun, they may, in some circumstances, be placed both before the substantive, but without the conjunction.

Ex. Un bon petit enfant. *A good little child.*

Sometimes one of these adjectives is used before and the other after the substantive, when their respective place is thus fixed by the above mentioned rules.

Ex. Un grand chapeau bleu. *A large blue hat.*

If more than two adjectives qualify the same word, they generally come after it, and the conjunction *et*, is prefixed to the last.

Ex. Une personne bonne, belle et sage. *A good, handsome, and wise person.*

In all this, custom is the best guide; but an adjective which follows a substantive, expresses its quality with much more force than it does when preceding it, for we generally prefix the adjective to the noun when we merely intend to mention the quality, but we place it after the noun, if we want to determine the quality in a particular manner. Then the adjective becomes one of the principal objects of the sentence.

Taste and a correct ear will assign them their proper situations.

3d REMARK. Many French words are both substantives and adjectives, and can be used both with and without a noun, either in the masculine or in the feminine gender. Those expressing moral qualities are generally of this kind; but yet no precise rule can be laid down. They can be known by consulting dictionaries.

Ex. Un avaré, *an avaricious man.*
 une coquette, *a coquettish woman.*
 une buveuse, *a drinking woman.*

4th REMARK. In English an adjective can be used substantively only in the plural. It is then preceded by the definite article *the*. In French an adjective is used substantively in both numbers and preceded by the article *le, la, les*.

Ex. Le bon, *all what is good.*
 les bons, *the good.*

EXERCISE.

That good old hermit lives happy in his cottage. Sister, will you put on to-day your handsome green dress? That old rich covetous man will leave his wealth to young lavish nephews, who will spend that immense fortune in the course of two or three years. My aunt has an ancient round table which is strong and heavy. You are a proud woman. You will punish that lazy boy. This unhappy man will not return to his country. Is she not a lying girl? I purchased a spacious convenient house. A brave generous man will not fight for an unjust cause. He behaved as a wise man. The good will be rewarded and the wicked punished. The rich owe assistance to the poor.

Several remarks must be made on the agreement of adjectives.

1st REMARK. Some adjectives are used as adverbs. They remain unalterable, since their office is to modify verbs, and not to qualify nouns. They generally correspond in the two languages.

Ex. Elle parle bas, *She speaks low.*
 Ces fleurs sentent bon, *These flowers smell good.*

2d. REMARK. An adjective frequently serves to qualify two or more substantives of different genders.

If it be used to qualify substantives of the same gender, it must be put in the plural and agree with them in gender.

Ex. Le roi et le berger sont égaux après la mort,
The king and the shepherd are equal after death.

When the two substantives to which the adjective relates are of different genders, the adjective is to be put in the masculine plural.

Ex. Mon père et ma mère sont contents,
My father and mother are contented.

However, if it be used to qualify several substantives of

things forming the objective of a verb or a preposition, it may, by way of ellipsis, agree with the last only ; as, *elle avoit les yeux et la bouche ouverte, she had the eyes and mouth open.*

EXERCISE.

Uprightness and piety are much esteemed, even by the wicked. A man in an elevated state and a man in an obscure situation, are equally precious in (1) the eyes of God. His probity and disinterestedness are well known. The love of life and the fear of death are natural to man. Ignorance and self-love are equally presumptuous. My sister and brother were very attentive to the lessons of their masters. His impetuosity and courage long (2) restrained soon surmounted all obstacles. The imagination and genius of Ariosto, although irregular in their course, yet interest and captivate the reader. You will find in Gessner's Idylls sentiments and a grace altogether (3) affecting.

OF THE DEGREES OF SIGNIFICATION OF THE ADJECTIVE.

Grammarians commonly reckon three degrees of signification ; the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

The *positive* is the adjective expressing the quality of an object, without any increase or diminution ; as, *beau*, handsome ; *grand*, great.

The *comparative* is so called because it draws a comparison between two or many objects. When two things are compared, the one is either superior, inferior, or equal to the other ; hence, three sorts of comparison, that of *superiority*, *inferiority*, and *equality*.

These three kinds of comparison are marked in French with the adverbs *plus*, more, *moins*, less, and *aussi*, as, prefixed to the adjectives. These adverbs are to be repeated before every adjective, when several are joined to the same substantive. The English conjunction *than*, or *as*, is rendered in French by *que*.

N. B. In English, many adjectives are put in the comparative of superiority by adding the syllable *er*, or simply *r*, to the positive ; as, *rich*, *richer* ; *fine*, *finer*. In French, all our comparatives of superiority are formed by prefixing the

(1) à (2) long-tems. (3) tout-à-fait.

adverb *plus*, more, to the positive. Three adjectives are excepted; *meilleur*, better; *pire*, worse; *moindre*, less, or smaller.

EXAMPLES.

COMPARATIVE OF SUPERIORITY.

La rose est plus belle que la violette, The rose is more beautiful than the violet.

Mon oncle fut plus sage que votre père, My uncle was wiser than your father.

COMPARATIVE OF INFERIORITY.

La violette est moins belle que la rose, The violet is less beautiful than the rose.

COMPARATIVE OF EQUALITY.

La tulipe est aussi belle que la rose, The tulip is as beautiful as the rose.

N. B. *By*, after a comparison, and expressing the difference, is rendered in French by *de*.

EXERCISE.

Homer was perhaps a greater genius than Virgil; but Virgil had a more delicate and more refined taste than Homer. Miss D. is as amiable as her cousin. My father is as rich as my uncle, but he makes a better use of his riches. Mrs. P. is less polite than her daughter. Paris is not so populous as London. My daughter is taller than your son by two inches. That board is shorter by two feet. Your cousin is less noble than you. She is handsomer and more learned than her sisters. Lucia is taller and more proud than her sister. Wine is better for health than brandy. Velvet is dearer than cloth, but it is not so dear as lace. Shipwreck and death are less fatal (1) than the pleasures which attack virtue. The violet is less brilliant to the eye than the lily, a true emblem of modesty and of pride. Autumn is less varied than spring. You are older than my sister by ten years at least. Pope's images are as perfect as his style is harmonious. Delicacy of taste is a gift of nature as scarce as true genius. The love of our neighbor (2) is as necessary in society for the happiness of life, as in christianity for eternal salvation.

REMARK. The three words which are comparatives in themselves require some explanation.

(1) *funeste*. (2) *prochain*.

Meilleur, better, is the comparative of good, and is used instead of *plus bon*, which is never said.

N. B. The English word *cheap*, is rendered in French by *bon marché*; its comparative of superiority will then be *meilleur marché*.

Pire signifies *plus mauvais*, worse, or more wicked, and is used instead of this.

Moindre means *plus petit*, less or smaller, and is used instead of these terms.

N. B. The English words *better*, *worse*, and *less*, are not only the comparatives of the adjectives *good*, *bad*, and *little*, but yet of the adverbs *well*, *badly*, and *little*. The learner will not be apt to confound these different parts of speech, if he recollect that an adjective qualifies a noun, while an adverb modifies a verb.

EXERCISE.

These sweetmeats are very good, but those apples are better. You are wicked, but you have been worse. My expense is small, and will become smaller. His condition has not been worse. This column is less than the other. The remedy is worse than the disease. The life of a slave is ten times (1) worse than death. Beef is better than mutton. My grey horse was very bad, but this mare is worse. Are you not better than your friend? Those books are cheap enough, but you would have had them cheaper at auction.

Every other difficulty respecting the comparatives, will be found with the adverbs.

The *superlative* expresses the quality in a very high, or in the highest state; hence, there are two sorts of superlatives, the *absolute* and the *relative*.

The *superlative absolute* is formed by putting *très*, *fort*, *bien*, very; or, *extrêmement*, extremely; *infiniment*, infinitely before the adjective. It is called absolute, because it does not express any relation to other objects.

EXAMPLE.

Londres est une très-belle ville.

London is a very fine city.

The superlative relative is formed by prefixing the ar-

ticle *le, la, les*, to the French comparative, that is to say, to the adverbs *plus ou moins*, or, to the adjectives *meilleur, moindre, pire*. It is called relative, as it expresses a relation to other objects.

N. B. As the article is the distinctive mark of the superlative relative, it cannot be spared under any pretext, but must always be placed before the adverbs or adjectives, and repeated with *plus*, and *moins*, before every adjective.

In, after a superlative relative, is expressed as if it was *of*.

EXAMPLE.

Paris est la plus belle des villes, L'homme le plus courageux,
Paris is the finest of cities. The most courageous man.

EXERCISE.

That landscape is very diversified, very extensive, and infinitely agreeable. The Alps are very high and steep. The most able men are not always the most virtuous. The most ancient, and most general of all kinds of idolatry was the worship (1) rendered to the sun. Wine is one of the most useful and agreeable gifts of Providence. Virtue is the most precious thing in the world. The lion is the strongest and most courageous of all animals. Ingratitude is the greatest of all vices. New-York is the handsomest city in the United States. (2) He was the most polite man in the city. You are the most studious young lady in the school. I purchased the largest house in Broadway.

DIFFERENCE OF CONSTRUCTION BETWEEN THE ENGLISH AND FRENCH LANGUAGES.

1. In English, the substantive of *measure* is placed before the substantive or adjective expressing the dimensions; as, *a tower two hundred feet high*, or *in height*. In French, the word which expresses dimension, is placed first, if it be an adjective, and the preposition *de* be added to it as a regimen; as, *une tour haute de deux cents pieds*. But if it be a substantive, or an adjective used substantively, it is placed after, with the preposition *de*, either before the noun of measure, or of dimension; as, *une tour de deux cents pieds de haut*, or *de hauteur*. This last mode is the most elegant.

(1) culte. (2) Etats-unis.

2. The English manner of expressing *dimensions*, is to use the verb *to be*; as, *the walls of Algiers are twelve feet thick, and thirty feet high*; the French in general make use of the verb *avoir*; then there are two constructions; as, *les murs d'Alger ont douze pieds d'épaisseur, et trente de hauteur*; or, *les murs d'Alger ont douze pieds d'épaisseur sur trente de hauteur*. This second mode of expression is most generally adopted.

EXERCISE.

This trunk, which is six feet long, is very convenient. You will be stopped in your march by a river, three hundred feet broad. This observatory, which is twelve hundred feet high, is very proper for knowing the true position of the stars. That terrace is a hundred and eighty feet broad, and twelve hundred feet long. The walls of our garden are twenty feet high, and three broad. That stone is twenty feet long, and six thick. This ditch is nine feet six inches deep, and six feet broad.

REGIMEN OF THE ADJECTIVES.

Several adjectives have a regimen; some require the preposition *de*, and others the preposition *d*, before a noun or a verb, which then is called the regimen or government of the adjective.

Those which commonly govern the preposition *de*, are

| | | | |
|------------|-----------------------|-----------|-------------------|
| Affranchi | <i>freed</i> | dépourvu | <i>destitute</i> |
| ambitieux | <i>ambitious</i> | désireux | <i>desirous</i> |
| amoureux | <i>amorous</i> | différent | <i>different</i> |
| approchant | <i>something like</i> | digne | <i>worthy</i> |
| arriéré. | <i>in arrears</i> | enchanté | <i>enchanted</i> |
| avare | <i>avaricious</i> | enivré | <i>inebriated</i> |
| aveugle | <i>dazzled</i> | envieux | <i>envious</i> |
| avide | <i>covetous</i> | exclusif | <i>exclusive</i> |
| capable | <i>capable</i> | exempt | <i>exempt</i> |
| certain | <i>certain</i> | faché | <i>sorry</i> |
| chéri | <i>cherished</i> | fatigué | <i>tired</i> |
| connu | <i>known</i> | fier | <i>proud</i> |
| complice | <i>complice</i> | fort | <i>strong</i> |
| content | <i>contented</i> | fou | <i>mad</i> |
| coupable | <i>guilty</i> | glorieux | <i>glorious</i> |
| couronné | <i>crowned</i> | honteux | <i>ashamed</i> |
| débarassé | <i>rid</i> | ignorant | <i>ignorant</i> |
| dénué | <i>destitute</i> | incapable | <i>incapable</i> |

| | | | |
|-------------|---------------------|-------------|--------------------|
| incertain | <i>uncertain</i> | négligent | <i>negligent</i> |
| inclusif | <i>inclusive</i> | plein | <i>full</i> |
| indépendent | <i>independent</i> | prodigue | <i>lavish</i> |
| indigne | <i>unworthy</i> | ravi | <i>ravished</i> |
| innocent | <i>innocent</i> | rayonnant | <i>sparkling</i> |
| insensible | <i>insensible</i> | redevable | <i>indebted</i> |
| ivre | <i>intoxicated</i> | soigneux | <i>careful</i> |
| jaloux | <i>jealous</i> | sûr | <i>sure</i> |
| las | <i>tired</i> | susceptible | <i>susceptible</i> |
| malade | <i>sick</i> | tributaire | <i>tributary</i> |
| mécontent | <i>dissatisfied</i> | vide | <i>void</i> |

Other adjectives govern the preposition *à*; they are

| | | | |
|--------------|--------------------|---------------|-----------------------|
| accessible | <i>accessible</i> | favorable | <i>favorable</i> |
| affable | <i>affable</i> | fidèle | <i>faithful</i> |
| agréable | <i>agreeable</i> | habile | <i>skilful</i> |
| allié | <i>allied</i> | impénétrable | <i>impenetrable</i> |
| ajusté | <i>fitted</i> | inégal | <i>unequal</i> |
| antérieur | <i>anterior</i> | infidèle | <i>unfaithful</i> |
| apre | <i>rough</i> | inférieur | <i>inferior</i> |
| apte | <i>apt</i> | insensible | <i>insensible</i> |
| ardent | <i>ardent</i> | nuisible | <i>hurtful</i> |
| assidu | <i>assiduous</i> | odieux | <i>odious</i> |
| attentif | <i>attentive</i> | obéissant | <i>obedient</i> |
| bon | <i>good</i> | pernicieux | <i>pernicious</i> |
| cher | <i>dear</i> | poli | <i>polite</i> |
| comparable | <i>comparable</i> | préférable | <i>preferable</i> |
| conforme | <i>conform</i> | préjudiciable | <i>prejudicial</i> |
| contigu | <i>contiguous</i> | propice | <i>propitious</i> |
| contraire | <i>contrary</i> | proportionné | <i>proportionable</i> |
| convenable | <i>suitable</i> | rebelle | <i>rebellious</i> |
| cruel | <i>cruel</i> | réfractaire | <i>refractory</i> |
| désobéissant | <i>disobedient</i> | sensible | <i>sensible</i> |
| égal | <i>equal</i> | serviable | <i>serviceable</i> |
| enclin | <i>inclined</i> | subordonné | <i>subordinated</i> |
| évident | <i>evident</i> | sujet | <i>liable</i> |
| exact | <i>exact</i> | supérieur | <i>superior</i> |
| exposé | <i>exposed</i> | terrible | <i>terrible</i> |
| fatal | <i>fatal</i> | visible | <i>visible</i> |

EXAMPLES.

Digne de récompense
nuisible à l'homme
content de son sort

*Worthy of reward
obnoxious to man
satisfied with his lot*

| | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| absent de la ville | <i>absent from the city</i> |
| intéressé dans l'affaire | <i>interested in the affair</i> |
| dangerueux pour l'innocence | <i>dangerous for innocence</i> |

The words *récompense*, *homme*, *sort*, &c. are the governments of the adjectives *digne*, *nuisible*, *content*, &c. as they are joined to these adjectives by the words *de*, *à*, &c.

It may be observed that most of these adjectives govern the same preposition in the two languages. *With* or *from* is translated by *de*. Any other preposition is generally rendered by the word corresponding to it in French.

Certain adjectives which are used after the verb *to be*, in the third person, are followed either by the preposition *de* or *à*. As that preposition depends entirely on the manner in which the verb *to be*, is used, the explanation of this difficulty will be found with the remarks on this verb.

REMARK. A noun may be governed by two adjectives, provided they do not require different regimens; as, *cet homme est utile et cher à sa famille*, that man is useful and dear to his family, but it would be incorrect to say, *cet homme est utile et chéri de sa famille*, that man is useful and beloved by his family; because the adjective *utile* does not govern the preposition *de*.

EXERCISE.

Virtuous men are always worthy of esteem. A weak mind is liable to many contradictions. A heart free from care enjoys the greatest possible felicity. Voltaire was always greedy of praise, and insatiable of glory. Rousseau, endowed with a strong and fiery imagination, was subject to frequent fits of misanthropy. Your advertisement has been inserted in the paper. That man was blind in his desires, although bowed down (1) under the weight of years. He was successful in all his enterprises; but he was ungrateful towards his protectors. Logwood is good for dying. He was beloved and courted by all his friends, and now he is feared and hated by the persons who know him. A young lady, mild, polite, and delicate, is certain of being beloved and esteemed by the persons who know her.

ADJECTIVES OF NUMBER.

All that has been said of the adjectives of number (see page 33 and following) must now be recollected.

(1) *accablé*.

RULE. When mentioning the days of the month, the French make use of the cardinal number instead of the ordinal number, and say *le onze d'avril*, the eleventh of April, and not *le onzième*; *le vingt cinq du mois prochain*, the twenty-fifth of next month, and not *le vingt-cinquième*, &c. Except, however, that in stead of *l'un du mois*, they say, *le premier*, the first day of, &c. and sometimes *le second*, though not so well, for *le deux*.

RULE. The cardinal numbers are also used for the ordinal, in speaking of the order of the sovereigns; as, *Louis Seize*, *George trois*; Lewis the fifteenth, George the third. Except the two first of the series; as, *Henri premier*, *George second*, Henri the first, George the second.

The Emperor, *Charles the Fifth*, and Pope *Sixtus the Fifth*, are known under the names of *Charles quint* and *Sixte quint*, as a distinction from other sovereigns.

EXERCISE.*

He died on the fifteenth of January, and was buried on the seventeenth. My father will be here on the fifth of next month. Come on the first day of July, and I will be disengaged. The unhappy Louis the Sixteenth was led to the scaffold on the twenty-first of January, one thousand seven hundred and ninety-three. Francis the First and Charles the Fifth were worthy rivals. Louis the Twelfth, a king of France, was surnamed the father of the people. His note falls due on the twenty-first of next September, but he will pay me in October, for I know that he has no money now. How did you spend the fourth of July? Henry the Fourth was one of the best King's of France; but Louis the Eleventh was extremely cruel.

REMARK. The definite article *the*, is suppressed in French before the ordinal number, when it is preceded by a noun used to quote a *chapter*, *article*, or *page* of a book; as, *Livre troisième*, *book the third*, *chapitre dixième*, &c.

There are several other sorts of numbers, viz. *Collective*, *distributive*, and *proportional*.

Collective numbers are those which express a certain

* The preposition *on*, prefixed in English to the numbers of the days of the month, should not be expressed in French.

quantity forming a whole. Except in trade they are generally used to express a doubtful number. For instance, when I say, *une centaine d'hommes*, I mean *about a hundred men*.

These numbers are

| | | | |
|---------------|----------------------------|--------------|-----------------------------|
| unité | <i>unit</i> | quarantaine | <i>two score</i> |
| couple | <i>couple</i> | cinquantaine | <i>two score and a half</i> |
| trio | <i>trio</i> | | |
| deux couples | <i>two couples</i> | soixantaine | <i>three score</i> |
| demi-douzaine | <i>half a dozen</i> | un cent | <i>one hundred</i> |
| huitaine | <i>week</i> | | <i>precisely</i> |
| neuvaine | <i>nine days of prayer</i> | centaine | <i>one hundred</i> |
| | | millier | <i>one thousand</i> |
| dizaine | <i>half a score</i> | myriad | <i>one myriad</i> |
| douzaine | <i>dozen</i> | million | <i>one million</i> |
| quinzaine | <i>about fifteen</i> | milliad, or | <i>one thousand</i> |
| | <i>a fortnight</i> | billion | <i>millions</i> |
| vingtaine | <i>a score</i> | trillion, | <i>trillion</i> |
| trentaine | <i>a score and a half</i> | &c. &c. | |

The above numbers, when joined to substantives, govern *de*; as, *une douzaine d'œufs*, a dozen eggs.

They must be, like the substantives, always determined by some preceding word, or by an article or a cardinal number; they take the sign of the plural. Ex. *plusieurs milliers*, several thousands; *la douzaine*, the dozen; *trois couples*, three couples.

The distributive numbers are those which express the different parts of a whole; as, *la demi*, *la moitié*, the half; *le quart*, the quarter; *un cinquième*, a fifth; and so on, always using the ordinal numbers.

Distributive numbers take the sign of the plural; as, *les quatre cinquièmes*, four fifths.

Proportional numbers denote the progressive increase of things. They are *le double*, the double; *le triple*, the treble; *le quadruple*, *le quintuple*, *le sextuple*, *le décuple*, ten fold; *le centuple*, a hundred fold.

The following are very seldom used. *Septuple*, sevenfold; *octuple*, eightfold; *nonuple*, ninefold.

We have in French, no more of these numbers, as we cannot form them as in English, by an addition to the cardinal number.

There is in English another kind of number which re-

quires to be compared to the French. Some grammarians call it number of repetition.

| | |
|--------------|-----------------------|
| Ex. une fois | once |
| deux fois | twice |
| trois fois | thrice or three times |
| quatre fois | four times |

and so on, always using the word *fois* for the English word *times*.

EXERCISE.

How many eggs shall I put in your basket? three dozen, or two score? I perceived *about fifty* men in your garden. They were pulling down the trees, and *about twenty* women who followed them, carried the fruit *away*. I had half a dozen pears, but my brother had *about fifteen* oranges. The half of four is two. The three fifths of twenty-five are fifteen. The seventh of twenty-eight, is equal to the tenth of forty, or to the two thirds of six, or to the fourth of sixteen. If you give your money to the poor, God will return you double. This corn will yield a hundred fold. My money will bring *forth* the quadruple. If, instead of reading your lesson two or three times, you had taken the book ten times or twelve times, you would not have been punished. If you go there once more, you will be fatigued. Should you do that ten times more, you never would be so successful.

REMARK. *Un millier* is very often employed for one thousand *weight*, but *quintal* is never used except in the sense of one hundred *weight*.

There are many other numerical expressions used in poetry, music, &c.; as, *distique, tercet, quatrain, sixain, huitain*, &c. *Solo, duo, trio, quatuor, quinque, quinte, octave*, &c.

CHAPTER IV.

OF THE PRONOUNS.

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The personal pronouns, either nominative or objective to the verbs, are not always expressed according to the list given in the first part, as will be explained in this chapter. In many circumstances, but particularly when governed

by a preposition or a conjunction, they must be used as in the following list :

| | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| me | is expressed by | <i>moi</i> |
| thee | " | <i>toi</i> |
| him | " | <i>lui</i> |
| her | " | <i>elle</i> |
| us | " | <i>nous</i> |
| you | " | <i>vous</i> |
| them (<i>mas.</i>) | " | <i>eux</i> |
| them (<i>fem.</i>) | " | <i>elles</i> |

EXERCISE,

ON PERSONAL PRONOUNS AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

My brothers wish to have an explanation with you, because you spoke against them; and my sisters heard (1) lately that you had spoken of them, and they would like (2) to see you. These letters are for me, and that young man has opened them. You will not do that in spite of me. He does not come with me. These ladies were walking this morning in Broadway, and their children were with them; they are often with their husbands, but sometimes they go *out* without them. I shall arrive *before* him. Was he before her, or was she before him? I did not observe them, because they were behind me.

OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS NOMINATIVE TO THE VERBS.

RULE. It is a general principle, that the French personal pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, and elles*, nominatives to the verbs, cannot be used, unless they are followed, or immediately preceded, (as in interrogative sentences) by a verb which is in the number and person that they govern.

N. B. These pronouns must be repeated before every verb. Those of the third person are very often omitted, but yet it is more prudent for the learner to repeat them.

Should not the above rule be strictly observed, there would be no agreement between the verb and the pronoun. For instance, if you translate *you and I will go*, by *vous et j'irai*, it will be perceived that the verb *irai* is in the singular, while the two pronouns, *vous* and *je*, form a plural number. If, considering *vous* and *je* equivalent to *we*, you say *vous et j'irons*, the singular pronoun *je* will be followed by a verb in the plural, which consequently will

(1) apprendre. (2) désirer.

not agree with it. The following rules will show how these pronouns should be expressed.

RULE. Whenever a verb has for its subjects two or more pronouns of different persons, these pronouns must be expressed as in the preceding list, and their sense repeated by a collective pronoun, which answers for all.

The person who speaks always names himself last, and the person addressed is generally named first.

Ex. Vous, lui, et moi nous irons,
You, he and I shall go.
 Vous et lui vous chanterez,
You and he will sing.

In the third person, it is better to begin the sentence by the collective pronoun and add the other pronouns after the verbs.

Ils vont à la campagne lui et elle,
He and she are going to the country.

EXERCISE.

My sister and I were walking by (1) the last rays of the setting sun, and we were admiring the beauty of the scene. In the long winter evenings my father, my brother, and I used to spend two hours in the library. You and he will accompany me to the museum. He and she will pay the debts of their brother. You, he, his brother, sister, and I, are all contented. You and I learn French.

RULE. Personal pronouns must be translated as in the foregoing list, when they are separated from the verbs by a relative pronoun, and in short, when, although nominative, they are not accompanied by a verb in the same number and person, or when they are not objectives of the verbs. A few examples will answer for the numerous rules, which might be added as corollaries to this last one.

| | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Ex. Moi qui suis son fils. | <i>I who am his son.</i> |
| Moi, lui parler. | <i>I, speak to him!</i> |
| Il est plus sage que toi. | <i>He is wiser than thee.</i> |
| C'est lui. | <i>It is he.</i> |
| Qui parle? Eux, moi. | <i>Who speaks? They, I.</i> |

Sometimes the same pronouns are used whenever any difference or distinction between persons is in-

tended to be expressed, but in this case, they must be immediately followed by the nominative pronoun of the verb.

Ex. Il était à pied, et moi, j'étais à cheval. *He was on foot, and I was on horseback.*

They are also, in familiar sentences, used by repetition or superfluity.

Ex. Je prétends, moi. *I do maintain, I.*

Mettez-moi cet homme en prison. *Put that man in prison.*

EXERCISE.

You are not as prudent as he, and you are more successful than I. I, betray my best friend! Thou who speakest, wouldst thou suffer that insult, without saying a word? Who knocks at the door? I. A gentleman was here yesterday, either you or he. Thou art greater than I, and from thee I have learned humility and wisdom.

REMARK. The word *même*, is sometimes added and connected by a hyphen to these pronouns, to denote, in a more special manner, the person spoken of; as,

| | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Moi-même, <i>Myself.</i> | Nous-mêmes, <i>Ourselves.</i> |
| toi-même, <i>thyself.</i> | vous-même, <i>Sing. yourself.</i> |
| lui-même, <i>himself.</i> | vous-mêmes, <i>plur. yourselves.</i> |
| elle-même, <i>herself.</i> | eux-mêmes, <i>masc. themselves.</i> |
| | elles-mêmes, <i>fem. themselves.</i> |

REMARK. The pronoun *vous*, used for a single person, requires the verb to be put in the plural, but if an adjective or participle be added to it, that adjective or participle is used in the singular.

Ex. Vous êtes coupable, vous serez puni,
You are guilty; you will be punished.

It is now necessary to examine all other pronouns which are used like the personal.

OF THE ENGLISH PRONOUN IT.

Since we have no neuter gender in French, we do not want a pronoun to represent words of that gender. Thus, *it*, must be expressed like a personal pronoun; when nominative to the verb, by *il*, when standing for a masculine substantive, and by *elle*, when for a feminine substantive;

and when objective to the verb, by *le*, masculine, and by *la*, feminine.

The pronoun *they*, or *them*, is expressed in French in the same manner for things, as for persons.

N. B. It must be observed that the pronoun *it*, which is now treated of, is the very pronoun which is used to prevent the repetition of a substantive in the neuter gender, and not the impersonal pronoun *it*, which will require a longer explanation.

EXERCISE.

I had a handsome knife and I lost it. Last Monday, I bought a beautiful penknife, and I broke it. I have this pen, but I am not able to mend (1) it. It is not good ; give it to your brother. Do not break it. I had a considerable number of pens ; I gave them *away*, and now when I wish to write, I cannot. That clock is not pretty, but it is good. My watch is not excellent. I paid thirty dollars for it, and besides it cost me more than ten dollars for cleaning it. This coat lasted me very long, but the cloth was excellent. It cost me ten dollars a yard. I wore it during three years, and it is still very good.

OF THE PRONOUNS *en* AND *y*.

If no example on the pronoun *it*, in the objective indirect, has been given, it is because that pronoun, when preceded in English by the preposition *of* and *to*, is represented in French by two words, *en* and *y*. These words, which answer for *of it*, *of them*, and *to it*, *to them*, are placed in the same manner as the personal pronouns.

Ex. J'*en* parle,

I speak of it.

Ajoutez-*y* du sucre,

Add sugar to it.

They are used in many more instances, but they will be examined now, only for what regards their connection with the pronoun *it*.

EXERCISE.

That affair is very delicate ; the success of it is doubted. He has a fine appointment ; he aspired to it. I assure you of the truth of that anecdote ; I am sure of it. Your reason is good ; I yield to it. The French is a beautiful language, I now see

(1) To make a pen, or to mend a pen, is translated by *tailler*.

the beauty of it. I hit the tree ; I aimed at it. That sum of money is not the whole of your debt. Add ten dollars to it, and I think that it will then be the amount of my bill.

OF THE FRENCH PRONOUN *on*.

That pronoun, which is one of the most important of our language, is called *indefinite*, and would have been placed amongst these, if it had not been thought best to explain its analogy with the other personal pronouns. It is called *indefinite*, as it designates the persons in a vague and indeterminate manner.

In English, several modes of expression, particularly the passive way, are used, when the person or persons performing the action is or are unknown or indeterminate. The French use the pronoun *on* in the same instances.

This pronoun is always the nominative of the verb, which agrees with it in the third person, and is always singular, although it often conveys the idea of a multitude. Its gender is the masculine, but there are, however, occasions in which it is evidently feminine. This is when the sense of the sentence indicates that this pronoun can refer but to women. Then, if any adjective is connected to it, it should be put in the feminine. *On* must be repeated before all the verbs, and refer to one and the same subject.

EXAMPLES.

On est heureux quand *on* est sage,
One is happy when he is wise.

On blame toujours les défauts des autres,
People always blame other's failings.

On travaille nuit et jour à la tour,
They work night and day at the tower.

On aime le père and *on* craint le fils,
The father is beloved, and the son is feared.

On flatte les tyrans mais *on* ne les aime pas,
Tyrants are flattered, but they are not beloved.

On dit qu'il y a eu une bataille,
It is said there has been a battle.

On n'est pas toujours jeune et jolie,
One is not always young and pretty.

REMARK. As this pronoun begins with a vowel, an euphonic *-t-* is prefixed to it in interrogative verbs, as with the other pronouns of the third person. Ex. *a-t-on terminé? have they terminated?* In any other part of a sentence, when it is preceded by a word ending in a vowel which cannot be elided, it is generally spelt thus: *l'on*, for the sake of euphony. Ex. *Si l'on parle de moi, if they speak of me.*

EXERCISE.

People love virtue, but neglect the practice of it. They knock at the door. One excuses his own failings. It is reported that the Emperor of Russia will command his army himself. He is flattered, but he is not beloved. They have raised that house in three weeks. If you behave yourself in that manner, what will people say of you? It is thought that this news is true. They write me from Madrid that thou hast left Spain. One cannot read Telemachus without becoming better. Have you been there to day? Have they decided that you should lose your wager? One is not always young and pretty. When one has a good husband, one is always happy.

OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUN *Se* AND *Soi*.

This pronoun is called reflective, as it marks the relation of a person to himself. *Se* or *s'* is used with reflective verbs, and answers for *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, and *themselves*; when used with reciprocal verbs, it answers for *one another*, *each other*; when with the third class of pronominal verbs, it is superfluous. (See page 75, verbs called pronominal, &c.)

It has an intimate relation with the pronoun *on*, of which it may be considered as the objective. In this case it has in French the sense of one's self. Ex. *On se trouve exposé à bien des dangers*, one finds himself, (one's self) exposed to many dangers.

It answers both as objective direct or indirect to the verb, and is placed as the other personal pronouns.

Soi, which always signifies *one's self*, is only employed after prepositions, and on the same occasions as the pronouns, page 133.

It is often followed by the word *même*, as *soi-même*, one's self, &c. No pronoun but *soi*, can be used in relation with an indefinite or indeterminate pronoun.

EXERCISE.

When one believes himself happy, he is really happy. When one speaks against his neighbor, he speaks against himself. One must take on himself the care of his own affairs. In a thousand instances one does not watch sufficiently over himself. Why would not one speak for himself? One always gives one's self praises. Vice is odious in itself.

OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS OBJECTIVE TO THE VERB.

These pronouns must be repeated with all the verbs.

Sometimes a personal pronoun, although expressed before the verb, is repeated after it, in order to point out more particularly the person which it represents. This second pronoun then, is one of the list, page 133. Should the pronoun be objective indirect, it might be expressed but once after the verb, and the preposition expressed by *à*.

Ex. Oui, je le punirai, lui.

Yes, I shall punish him.

Je parlais à vous.

I was speaking to you.

There is another principle to apply on personal pronouns when they are objective to the verbs. It is, that two or more pronouns cannot come before a verb according to the rule, page 40, when they are all objective direct or indirect. In such an instance their sense is again expressed by a collective pronoun as it is practiced when they are nominative or subject. This pronoun is used as the objective, while all the others come after the verb, and if they be objectives indirect, the preposition *à* is expressed, and the personal pronouns used as they are after a preposition.

EXAMPLES.

Il nous a invités vous et moi,

He invited you and me.

Vous doit-il cette somme à vous et à lui?

Does he owe that sum to you and him?

Je les aime beaucoup lui et elle,

I love him and her very much.

If one of these objectives be a substantive, instead of a pronoun, the same rule should be observed; as, Il nous doit cette somme à nous et à nos associés, *he owes that sum to us and our partners.*

EXERCISE.

He flatters and praises me. She has encouraged and rewarded me generously. She has pleased and charmed me. She received you, him, and me very well. When he perceived you and her, he was surprised, and stepped back. I saw him and them in the museum. Did you accompany her and them?

RULE. Not only two pronouns, (as above referred to,) cannot come together before the same verb, but yet the pronouns of the first and second person, and even the pronoun *se*, when objective, direct to the verb,* do not suffer any other pronoun, even indirect objective, to come with them. These indirect objectives must be used after the verb, and the preposition *to* expressed before them.

Ex. Il me compare à lui,
he compares me to him.
 Il se soumit à elle,
he submitted himself to her.

The pronoun *se* is considered as direct objective, when it belongs to a pronominal verb of the third class.

Ex. Il se fie à vous,
he trusts you.

This will be an appropriate place to say, that after several neuter verbs, the preposition *à*, which they govern, does not establish such a relation between that pronoun and the verb, that it might be considered as objective to the verb; therefore, this pronoun is merely the objective of the preposition, and comes after it, instead of being connected with the verb. These verbs are principally *courir à*, to run to, and any other verb after which *to* is used in the sense of *toward*. *Penser à*, to think of, and all verbs expressing thought, &c.

EXERCISE.

When I showed myself to him he did not know me. I will introduce you to her, and she will henceforward admit your visits. When General P. introduced me to you, you thought that I was a captain. I trust myself to you. She described me so well to him, that he found me in the crowd. He came

* The learner must, undoubtedly, now understand how to distinguish the direct from the indirect objective. He may, at all events, refer to pages 37, 38, and 39.

to me and brought me to you, then you compared me to him, and as your brothers were there, you showed me to them. I constantly think of you and of them. Fate gives thee to me. The king sends me to you. Powerful queen! an oath binds us to thee. The praise was not intended for him, but he attributed it to himself. He drew them to himself. She appropriated them to herself.

But the rule, page 139, is not observed with the pronouns of the third person, except *se*, nor with those of the first and second person when indirect objectives to the verb. They are placed as the following rule indicates :

RULE. When a personal pronoun of the third person direct objective to the verb, comes with a pronoun which is indirect objective, it is used second, if that pronoun be one of the first or second person; but if the indirect objective be a pronoun of the third person, the direct objective is used before the indirect.*

N. B. This rule is extremely essential to understand, as its application is almost general.

REMARK. One or two pronouns after an imperative are connected to the verb by hyphens.

| | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Ex. Il me le donne, | <i>he gives it to me.</i> |
| nous vous la montrerons, | <i>we will show her to you.</i> |
| rendez-les-lui, | <i>return them to him.</i> |

EXERCISE.

Where is my ruler? I lent it to you; where did you leave it? I shall go home (1) immediately, and will fetch it to you. Her uncle sends her to me. Shall I introduce her to you? If you have her letter give it to her. Do they not understand this difficulty? Explain it to them. Lend me your wagon and horse. I will lend you the wagon, but as for the horse I will not lend him to you. Do you know these engravings? Shall I show them to you? No, sir, do not show them to me now; but, since that gentleman wishes to see them, send them to him, but do not sell them to him if he does not give a good price for the set. Since you have read those books, return them to us; we lent them to you for two or three days, and you kept them three weeks. If you have not read them entirely, I will send them to you to-morrow. That ring is for my sister. Give it to her.

* See, however, the following observations.

(1) à la maison.

OBSERVATIONS. The pronoun *moi*, which is used after the first and second person of the imperative, is always placed last.

Ex. Donnez-le-moi, Give it to me.
and not *Donnez-moi le*.

The reflective pronoun *se*, joined to another objective pronoun, always precedes it. Thus you may say,

Il se l'est attiré, He has drawn it to himself.
and not *Il le s'est attiré*.

En and *y*, when they come with other pronouns, before or after the same verb, are always used second. However, *y*, after an imperative, is used before *moi*.

But with *en*, *moi* and *toi* are placed before, and the two words are contracted into *m'en*, and *t'en*.

Invitez-y-moi, Invite me to it.
Parlez-m'en, Speak to me of it.

Should the verb, which precedes the pronouns *en* and *y*, in the second person singular of the imperative mood, end in *e* mute, this *e* would suffer no elision; and, in order to prevent the meeting of the two vowels, an *s* should be added to the verb.

Ex. Parles-en à ton père. Speak of it to thy father.
Cette raison est bonne, cèdes-y. That reason is good, yield to it.

When they are preceded by the pronouns *je*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *le*, and *la*, or the negative *ne*, they oblige these words to drop their *e* or *a*, and to take an apostrophe.

Ex. Il m'en a donné une partie,
He gave me a part of it.
Vous n'y faites pas attention,
You do not pay attention to it.

EXERCISE.

Where is that picture? Show it to me. O! do give it to me. Why does he appropriate it to himself? She compares him to herself. I only wish to have a small piece (1) of it. Do introduce him to me; I wish to know him. Do you not agree

(1) Morceau.

to it? Do you not think of it? Since you have read these books, lend them to me. I will lend them to you, but return them to me next week. Give me one of them. This problem is not difficult; find (thou) the solution of it. Think (thou) of it; give (thou) thy attention to it; and tell us the result of it.

ON SOME OF THE ABOVE PRONOUNS, AND THEIR VARIOUS SIGNIFICATIONS.

CASES WHERE THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON MAY APPLY TO THINGS.

It has been seen that the pronoun *it* is translated in the nominative by the personal pronouns *il* and *elle*, and in the objective by *le* and *la*. Thus, in the plural, *they* and *them*, whether they stand for persons or things, are translated by *ils* or *elles*, when nominative to the verb, and by *les*, when objective. However, when these pronouns, either singular or plural, are preceded by the prepositions *of* or *to*, they are expressed by *en* and *y*.

By the same principle, the pronouns *it* and *them*, when governed by a preposition, are expressed by *lui* or *elle*, *eux* or *elles*, according to gender and number. But, although the use of these pronouns be allowed in these instances, for want of other expressions, yet they seem to relate rather to persons than to things, and on that account must, if possible, be omitted.

This cannot be a difficulty for the English pupil, because in such a case the pronoun is often omitted in English, and generally in the same instances as in French. However, it ought to be observed, that the French preposition is then expressed by an adverb of place, corresponding to it, and if no adverb of place be found to convey the same idea, then both the preposition and pronoun should be expressed.

Ex. Mon chapeau n'était pas sur la table mais dessous,
My hat was not on the table, but under it.

L'armée était en bataille; nous marchâmes contre elle,
The army was in battle; we marched up against it

Whenever the pronouns *en* and *y* can be substituted for the prepositions and pronouns, they must be used instead of them. The sentence then is much better.

Ex. Ce violon est bon j'en ai joué,
This violin is good; I played on it.

Cet arbre est trop haut je ne peux pas y monter,
That tree is too high, I cannot climb upon it.

En answers well for these prepositions which can be translated by *de*, and *y*, when they mean a place, or can be construed by *there*.

Although *y* represents the pronouns of the third person when they are applied to things and preceded by the preposition *à*, yet sometimes, in speaking of animals, *lui*, in the singular, and *leur*, in the plural, are used instead of *y*.

Ex. Ces chevaux sont rendus, donnez leur un peu de vin,
These horses are exhausted, give them a little wine.

Custom sometimes allows the same pronouns to be used when they refer to inanimate things, but it is much better to express the sentence in a different manner.

CASES IN WHICH THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS MAY BE USED INSTEAD OF THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

When a possessive adjective in English, is connected with a thing which belongs to the person spoken of, and cannot be understood to belong to any other, a personal pronoun representing the person to whom the thing belongs, is introduced in the sentence, and the possessive adjective is then expressed by an article.

Ex. Il lui coupa la jambe, *he cut off his leg.*

Should a personal pronoun be not so easily substituted for the possessive adjective, as in this example, or should the sentence present some ambiguity, the phrase should be translated as in English.

However, with reflective verbs, the possessive adjective is scarcely ever used.

Ex. Il va se laver les mains, *he is going to wash his hands.*

EXERCISE.

That boy pulls my hair. My uncle has sprained his ankle, and the doctor will cut his foot off. I broke my arm. Wash your face, it is dirty. They tied his arms and covered his eyes. That mischievous man was holding my hands and daubing my face. Stop your ears. Do you not hear that dreadful noise? Open your eyes, and you will see the wonders of nature.

CASES WHERE THE PRONOUNS *en* AND *y* MAY APPLY TO PERSONS.

Sometimes the pronouns *en* and *y* are used for persons.

It would certainly be preferable always to use the personal pronouns for persons, and *en* or *y* for things; but sometimes these words, on account of their being so short, are preferred to the others.

At all events it cannot be a fault to employ the personal pronouns for persons, while *en*, and particularly *y*, could not be used properly in many instances.

Taste and practice are the only means which can assist even a native to choose one of these ways in preference to the other.

The learner is therefore advised never to employ the pronoun *y* in reference to persons, and seldom the pronoun *en*; but if he use the latter, he must be certain that custom sanctions its employment.

EXERCISE.

Open the drawer, my book is in it. He took off (1) his hat, and found his handkerchief under it. Virtue is the first of blessings; from it alone we receive happiness. The labyrinth had been built upon the lake Mœris, and they had given it a prospect, proportional to its grandeur. Thy reasons convinced me, and by them I formed my decision. This book cost me much money, but I am indebted to it for my knowledge. I leave you the care of that bird; do not forget to give it water. That man pleases you; you speak of him often. You like French authors, you are always speaking of them. When a man is dead, we think no more of him.

OF THE FRENCH PRONOUN *le*.

This pronoun is used in French, with the active verbs, to represent the English adverb *so*, when it can be turned into *that*. If the verb be neuter, *so* is rendered by *ainsi*.

Ex. Je le crois. *I believe so.* (*I believe that.*)
pourquoi marchez-vous ainsi? *why do you walk so?*

It also represents the pronoun *it* when objective to the verb, and referring to a preceding member of the sentence or to a verb.

Ex. Sortez ; votre santé le demande,
go out ; your health requires it.
 ne faites pas cela ; je le défends,
do not do that ; I forbid it.

REMARK. In French, as it may have been observed, the objective of an active verb cannot be understood. Thus the verb *to be* cannot signify a manner of being, if this manner is not expressed after the verb by an adjective or a substantive, used adjectively. But as the repetition of these words would seem inelegant, *le* is used before the verb to supply their place, whatever be their gender or number, as the pronoun has then the sense of the adverb *so*, which is sometimes employed in English, in similar circumstances.

Ex. Est-il malade ? oui il l'est, (il est malade)
Is he sick ? yes he is. (he is so, he is sick.)

Observe, that it is not always an adjective which is thus understood after the verb *to be*, but often a substantive, or an adjective used substantively. This distinction will be made easy by trying to add the words *the person* after the verb *to be*. So, if I say, *are you the Empress ?* the answer will be, *yes, I am ;* that is to say, *I am the person, I am the empress ;* in which case the pronoun required in French, should agree, in gender and number, with the person which it represents.

Ex. Sera-t-elle votre héritière ? oui elle LA sera,
Will she be your heir ? yes, she shall be.
 Etes vous les accusés ? oui nous les sommes,
are you the prisoners ? yes, we are.

N. B. In these instances, the pronouns are used in the objective, and placed with the verb *être*, as with an active verb.

If the learner has well understood all the rules as far as now given, he will find an example of this distinction in the two following phrases.

Madame, êtes-vous mariée ? oui je le suis,
madam, are you married ? yes, I am (so.)
 Madame, êtes-vous la mariée ? oui je la suis,
madam, are you the bride ? yes, I am (the person.)

EXERCISE.

That man is happy. I do not think so. When a man is rich,

is he not happy? He is not always so. That young man was extremely negligent; he lived (1) so, he died so. I will spend (2) two hours with you. Yes, do so. Do you know a girl more unhappy, and treated with more ridicule than I am? You once found me amiable. Why am I not so at present? Ladies, are you relatives? Yes, we are. Are you, miss, the person who is sick? Yes, I am. Gentlemen, are you the authors of these pamphlets? Yes, we are. They say that she will be the queen of England. But she shall not be. We defend the interest of our parents when we can do it, without being guilty of injustice. She is very capricious; she was gay yesterday, and she is not to-day. Perhaps she will be sorrowful to-morrow.

OF THE FRENCH PRONOUN *en* IN ITS DIFFERENT SIGNIFICATION.

RULE. *En* is sometimes objective direct. That happens when it is used in the place of a substantive before expressed and used in a partitive sense. Therefore, it corresponds to the English word *some* or *any*, when used as a pronoun, that is to say, when not followed by a substantive.

Ex. Je n'*en* ai pas; donnez m'*en*.

I have not ANY; give me SOME.

It is evident, that if *some*, or *any*, had been followed by a substantive, they would have been expressed by the partitive article.

RULE. Sometimes in French as well as in English, a substantive is understood after a cardinal number, if the same substantive has been used a little before. But in French we must observe whether that number refers to the nominative or to the objective of the verb. In the former instance the French phrase is like the English; but if the number refers to the objective of the verb, the pronoun *en* must be used with the verb. That pronoun, in such a case, signifies of *them*, and without it the sentence would not be complete.

Thus, speaking of flowers, I would say,

Dix sont encore dans le vase.

Ten are still in the flower-pot.

Ex. Il *en* avait quatre.
he had four.

Donnez m'*en* six.
Give me six.

But should the number be preceded by the definite article *the*, the pronoun *en* must not be used.

Ex. Donnez-moi trois dollars; j'ai dépensé les deux qui étaient dans mon tiroir.

Give me three dollars; I spent the two which were in my drawer.

The same rule is observed with adverbs of quantity, or any word expressing quantity when not followed by the substantive.

Ex. EN avez-vous acheté beaucoup?
Did you buy much or many?

J'EN ai vendu un grand nombre,
I sold a great number.

EXERCISE.

Have you bought some sugar? I had some, so I did not buy any. Give me some. How many brothers have you? I had five, but I lost one lately, and at present I have four. You gave me two exercises, but I have written four. Did you see many pigeons? I saw several, but I killed only six; yet three fell in a thicket, and I lost them. If you wish to buy birds, go to the market; you will find a large quantity. I will not purchase any tea to-day, because I have five boxes in my store, and ten in the cellar. I gave them wine, and they drank five bottles. How much flour do you want? Give me ten pounds, I have not enough, but I will give you six pounds to-night, and I will send you four pounds to-morrow. A hundred men took a lottery ticket; one has gained, and ninety-nine have lost.

OF THE PRONOUN *en* SUPPLYING THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

According to the list of our possessive adjectives, page 31, the English word *its*, which refers to things, is translated by *son*, *sa*, *ses*, as well as *his* and *her*.

These adjectives, *son*, *sa*, *ses*, seem, however, to apply rather to persons than to things, and for the perspicuity of the style, the following rule is observed.

RULE. When the possessive adjective *its*, or any other, referring to nouns of the third person applied to things, can be, without any impropriety, turned into *of it*, the pronoun *en* is used in French with the verb, as usual, and holds the place of the possessive adjective.

Ex. Cette rivière est rapide ; le canal **EN** est étroit.

That river is rapid ; its channel is narrow (the channel of it.)

However, if the English possessive adjective be preceded by a preposition, it would be necessary to use *son, sa, ses*. And the same adjectives would be employed if the preposition *de* be introduced in the French sentence.

Ex. Paris est une belle ville ; j'admire la grandeur de ses bâtimens.

Paris is a fine city ; I admire the size of its buildings.

Cette table est petite et ses pieds n'ont pas de grâce.

This table is small, and its legs have no beauty.

EXERCISE.

Laocoon is one of the finest statues in France ; all its features are admirable. England extends her commerce over the whole globe ; by her situation she rules (1) over the sea. The Thames is a magnificent river ; its channel is extremely wide and deep. This fine country is justly celebrated by foreigners ; its climate is delightful ; its soil fruitful ; its laws wise, and its government just and moderate. That superb temple was upon the summit of a hill ; its columns were of Parian (2) marble, and its gates of gold. The army has lost a part of its soldiers. That church has its privileges.

REMARK. *En* and *y* are also used for many other prepositions and pronouns, such as *by it, for it, &c.* Practice alone will show the use of these words.

OF THE ENGLISH PRONOUN *one*.

The word **ONE** singular, and **ONES** in the plural, are very often used in English as pronouns. These words are not expressed in French when they are the nominatives of a verb, or when they refer to a nominative, then the adjective is preceded by the indefinite article *un, une* in the singular. and by the partitive represented by *de* in the plural. When objectives to the verb, the whole sentence is translated as above, but the pronoun *en* must be used with the verb and cannot be omitted. Thus, speaking of a knife, I would say,

(1) gouverner. (2) de Paros.

Un bon vous coûterait d'avantage,
A good one would cost you more.

Ex. Vous m' en donnerez un bon, et je vous en donnerai de mauvais.

You will give me a good one, and I will give you bad ones.

However, if the adjective, followed by *one*, be preceded by the definite article *the*, that article should be translated in French by *le, la, les*, and the pronoun *en* not used with the verb.

Ex. Montrez moi le grand. *Show me the large one.*

EXERCISE.

Among these peaches I found bad ones. I want a knife. Do you want a large one? No, sir, give me a small one. You bought two bay horses, and I bought a white one. The enemy had cowardly soldiers, and we had courageous ones. That scholar is a lazy boy; he is a wicked one too. I do not want a bad servant; I want a constant and a neat one. My neighbor has two daughters; the elder (1) is the learned one, and the younger is the amiable one. These two brothers have a different fortune. John is the rich one, Peter is the poor one. This violin is excellent, but a new one would be preferable.

OF THE ENGLISH PRONOUN *it*.

When this pronoun, *it*, refers to no preceding noun, it is expressed by *ce*, or *c'*, if it is used in the sense of *that*, or to point out a substantive, but it is expressed by *il*, if it belongs to an impersonal verb. Both of these pronouns are masculine.

Ex. C'est excellent, *It is excellent.*
 Il pleuvra demain, *It will rain to-morrow.*

It will be treated again of that pronoun with the verb *être*, *to be*.

N. B. In exclamatory sentences, *il* is used in preference, when it precedes an adjective.

REMARK. When *ce* is used, the adjective governs the preposition *à*; it requires after *il* the preposition *de*.

(1) aîné.

EXERCISE.

Has he been rich? yes, it is certain. I did not think that it was true when you told me so. Is it possible! no, it is not possible. It rains very hard, and it is not possible to go out. It is difficult to understand the reason of that conduct. It is not difficult to guess. I think that it cannot be justified, and it will be a matter of consequence. It is an abominable action. It was a very cunning trick. It was not possible to discover the snare concealed by his polite manners. It was very easy to perceive, because it was prudent to suspect the man.

OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

There are possessive pronouns. That is to say, words which hold the place of a substantive, and at the same time express the possession of it.

These pronouns are :

| SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. | | ENGLISH. |
|--------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>masc.</i> | <i>fem.</i> | <i>masc.</i> | <i>fem.</i> | |
| Le mien, | la mienne, | les miens. | les miennes, | <i>mine.</i> |
| Le tien, | la tienne, | les tiens, | les tiennes, | <i>thine.</i> |
| le sien, | la sienne, | les siens, | les siennes, | <i>his, hers,</i> <i>its.</i> |
| le nôtre, | la nôtre, | les nôtres, | | <i>ours.</i> |
| le vôtre, | la vôtre, | les vôtres, | | <i>yours.</i> |
| le leur, | la leur, | les leurs, | | <i>theirs.</i> |

These pronouns must agree, in gender and number, with the substantives which they represent. They cannot be used without the article, which, when preceded by the prepositions *de* or *à*, is contracted with them when it occurs.

Thus, speaking of my mother, I will say, *la mienne*, mine; and of his father, *le sien*, his, &c.

EXERCISES.

Is it your father or hers who decided that you should play in this room? If my friends had served me with the same zeal as yours, it is very certain that I should have succeeded. While I was speaking to his master, he was speaking to mine. Look at these trees; yours are small, and ours are high and lofty. I gave a good lesson to his children, and he gave a short one to yours. Be my friend, and I will be thine. If he takes my hat, I shall take his. You are satisfied with your wife, but that

man is not satisfied with his. They gave all the fruit to their children, and sent only two or three apples to ours. Theirs are more genteel than ours. You tore your apron, but your sister did not tear hers.

REMARK. The English pronouns *mine*, *thine*, *his*, &c. are not always expressed by *le mien*, *le tien*, *le sien*, &c. After the verb *to be*, when the sentence could be altogether expressed by the verb *to belong*, they are translated by the personal pronouns, preceded by the preposition *d*.

Ex. Ces livres sont à moi,
These books are mine, (belong to me.)

But the pronouns *le mien*, *le tien*, &c. should be used, if the intention of the person who speaks, is, merely to make a distinction between several objects, when it is known that one of them belongs to the person to whom the pronoun relates.

Thus, if I am asked which of those books are mine, I will answer,

Le blanc est le mien, The white one is mine. I distinguish it by the pronoun *le mien*, because it would be ridiculous to say that it belongs to me, when they acknowledge that one of the books is mine, but they merely wish to know which.

EXERCISE.

These books are mine, and that pen is yours, but, however, as my sister brought it here, perhaps it is hers. Major P. will sell me his Turkish sword; to-morrow it will be mine. Come with me and show me your horse. It is useless to go to the stable, the third one is mine. The third one is a grey one. Well, it is mine. My uncle and aunt are in the parlour, and that beautiful carriage and horses are theirs. I thought that it was yours. But I see six carriages and I do not know theirs. Theirs is the yellow one. Now you have seen his pictures, shall I show you mine? This picture is not yours. Yes, it is mine.

REMARK. We cannot translate in French, *that book of mine*, *these ribbons of yours*, and other sentences of the same kind, but we must choose either of the possessive pronoun or the demonstrative adjective, and say, *that book*, or *my book*; *these ribbons*, or *your ribbons*. The latter way is more generally used.

Sentences of this kind, *a friend of mine, a book of yours*, are thus reversed : *un de mes amis, un de vos livres*, one of my friends, one of your books.

EXERCISE.

Where is that desk of yours which is so neat? Take these pictures of mine and carry them to my father. A clerk of mine has paid the duties (1) to the collector. Send me a horse of yours, and I will go to your country seat. That house of yours is extremely commodious.

OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Relative pronouns are those which relate to a preceding noun, or pronoun, called the antecedent. In the phrase *l'homme qui joue*, the man who plays; *qui*, relates to the substantive *homme*; *l'homme*, is then the antecedent to the pronoun relative *qui*.

We have two relative pronouns, viz.

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| qui | { <i>who</i> <i>which,</i> <i>that,</i> | { when nominative to the following verb. |
| que | { <i>whom,</i> <i>which,</i> <i>that,</i> | |
| qui | { <i>whom,</i> <i>which,</i> | { objectives of prepositions. |
| quoi | <i>what,</i> | |
| De qui. (<i>for persons.</i>) | for persons, | { <i>whose, of whom, of which.</i> |
| and better, | for things, | |
| Dont (<i>both for persons</i> <i>and things.</i>) | | |
| Lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles. | { <i>who, which, whom,</i> either nominatives or ob- jectives. | |

These pronouns are compound of *quel*, and the article *le, la, les*, which is often preceded by the preposition *de* or *à*, and is contracted with them, when it occurs, in the following manner.

| | | | | |
|---------|--------------|-----------|-------------|---------------------------|
| Lequel, | laquelle, | lesquels, | lesquelles, | <i>who, which.</i> |
| duquel, | de laquelle, | desquels, | desquelles, | <i>of whom, of which</i> |
| auquel, | à laquelle, | auxquels, | auxquelles, | <i>to whom, to which.</i> |

This pronoun always agrees in gender and number with its antecedent; it is now very seldom used, except when preceded by a preposition.

Observe, that *qui*, *que*, and *dont*, may equally apply to persons and things; but *qui*, preceded by a preposition, can never apply to things; in this case, *lequel*, *duquel*, *auquel*, must be used, and sometimes *quoi*.

Lequel, *laquelle*, &c. apply both to persons and things.

REMARK. *Dont* is always used before the noun of which it implies possession; but should that noun be preceded by a preposition, *dequi* or *duquel*, &c. would be used instead of *dont*, and placed after the noun.

Ex. Le monarque dans les états duquel nous étions,
The monarch in the states of which we were.

OF THE ADVERB *où* USED AS A RELATIVE PRONOUN.

The adverb *où* is likewise employed as a relative pronoun, for *dans lequel*, *auquel*, *dans laquelle*, &c. and answers to the English *with which*, *in which*, &c.

Ex. C'est une affaire où je suis embarrassé,
It is an affair with which I am perplexed.

Où admits the preposition *de* and *par*.

Ex. C'est l'arrêt d'où dépend ma vie,
It is the sentence on which my life depends.
nous visitâmes les lieux par où il avait passé,
we visited the places through which he had passed.

EXERCISE.

The person who came here last night, will obtain for me the favor for which I ask. The tunes that you are playing now are not contained in the book that you brought me last Monday. My cousin sent them to me in a letter which I received on Tuesday last, and which contained, besides, many particulars about a man whom you know, and against whom your parents have spoken. The work, of which the author is prosecuted, is very strictly forbidden. You, whose sons are so attentive, tell me how you govern them. It is a country, for which I have much partiality. She has composed verses against which I would now speak, but for which I would not give half a dollar. The sta-

tions (1) which you desire, are not destined to you, but to a man who speaks much in his own favor, and still more against others. The city in which I arrived, and the village in which I lived, are as different as day and night. You did not tell me the country from which you came. The trials through which he has passed, were very hard indeed.

IMPORTANT REMARK. The relative pronoun cannot be omitted in French as in English. Thus, you will translate,

Where is the book you were reading?
by où est le livre que vous lisez?

Nor can the relative pronoun, when the objective of a preposition, be understood by placing the preposition at the end of the sentence; as,

Do you know the man you speak of?

This phrase should be translated thus:

Connaissez-vous, l'homme dont vous parlez?

Do you know the man of whom you speak?

EXERCISE.

I lost the money you gave me, and I did not go to the store you mentioned, because they sell their goods for cash, and I had no more change. The age we live in is the age of light and science. You did not like the person you spoke of. Perhaps in a year or two you will know the person you have dealt with. Did you give your purse to the first man you saw? The misfortunes I was plunged in, afflicted all my friends. The end he aims at is not very honest. The rings you received from that young lady are not as handsome as mine.

OF ABSOLUTE OR INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

The same English pronouns, *who*, *whom*, *what* and *which*, can be used without any antecedent; they are then called *absolute*, or *interrogative*, when a question is made. They are used differently in French.

Qui { *who*, } (for persons) whether nominative or ob-
 { *whom*, } jective.

qui, *whom*, when objective of prepositions.

que, *what*, (for things) whether nominative or objective.

quoi, *what*, (when objective of a preposition.

| | | |
|------------|---|--|
| quel | } | <i>what, which,</i> (when joined to a noun.) |
| quelle | | |
| quels | | |
| quelles | | |
| Lequel | } | <i>which,</i> (when used to mark a distinction.) |
| laquelle | | |
| lesquels | | |
| lesquelles | | |

These pronouns, *lequel, laquelle*, receive the preposition *de* or *d'*, in the same manner as they do when they are relative; they are used absolutely, and when followed by a noun, they are connected to it, as in English by the preposition *de*.

Ex. *Lequel de ces hommes,*
Which of these men.

REMARK. When *what* is used as subject or nominative to an interrogative verb, the pronoun is expressed by *que*, and the expression, *est-ce que* is used for the interrogation.

Ex. *Qu'est ce qui cause ce bruit?*
What causes that noise?

What is also expressed in French by *quoi*.

1st. When it is used without any relation to any preceding verb or preposition. In that instance it is sometimes joined to an adjective, and is connected to it by the preposition *de*.

Quoi de plus amusant?
What is more amusing?

And 2d. When it comes after the verb of which it is the objective, or when it is followed by a verb in the infinitive.

Ex. *Je ne sais quoi,*
I do not know what.
Il n'a pas su quoi dire,
He did not know what to say.

All that has been said about the relative pronouns, respecting the phrases with which the preposition is used at the end of the sentence, may also be applied to interrogative pronouns.

EXERCISE.

Who talks? What do you want? I knew who sings. Whom did you consult? What do you walk so fast for? What do you wish to have this for? What man would refuse his aid to a poor child? Which of these three young men will you select for your friend? What man is that? What grace! what delicacy! what harmony! What beautiful lines in Racine. Which of those ladies do you think the most amiable? What books do you use? What is it? what was contained in that drawer? Which of these gloves are yours? Which of these two young ladies is your sister? To whom do you speak?

RULE. *What* is expressed by *ce qui* or *ce que*, when its place can be supplied by *that which*. *Qui* after *ce* is used when *which* is nominative of the following verb, and *que* when *which* is objective.

Ex. *Ce qui est vrai est beau,*
What is true is fine.

Ex. *Je ne sais pas ce que vous dites,*
I do not know what you say.

Obs. Recollect that the indefinite article *a*, which is used in English after the pronoun *what*, when in an exclamation, is never expressed in French.

Ex. *Quelle beauté! What a beauty!*

REMARK. The interrogative pronouns *who*, *what*, and *which*, are often expressed by *quel*, *quelle*, &c. for persons, instead of *qui* or *que*, before the verb *to be*, followed by a substantive, in those tenses which begin by a vowel. This is not generally observed. Its use is to prevent the meeting of the two vowels.

Ex. *Quel est ce chevalier? Who is that knight?*

EXERCISE.

What a hero! What a soldier! Do you understand what he says? I do not believe what he related to us. What a story! Who is that certain uncle who is continually the hero of the history? What a wonderful tale! What you found is very good; but you do not perceive that what you took for gold is gilded copper. What is that music? Who was that lady who wished to speak to me? What succeeds is seldom condemned.

OF THE ENGLISH INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN *whose*.

The pronoun *whose*, which implies possession, is translated in French by *à qui*, when it is used interrogatively, and is accompanied by the verb *to be*. The phrase is construed as follows:

Ex. A qui est cette bague? } *Whose ring is this?*
 } *Whose is this ring?*

When *whose* is used without the verb *to be*, it may be expressed by one or the other of the following modes.

Quelle bague? } *Whose ring?*
 La bague de qui? }

Dont is only relative, and cannot be used interrogatively.

EXERCISE.

Whose medal is this? Whose pens are those? Whose is this handkerchief? Is it yours? No, Madam, it is mine. Whose is it? I bought the king of Spain's watch. Whose watch did you buy? Mary has soiled my cousin's book. Whose book has she soiled? Hers. Whose are these gloves? They are mine.

OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

Demonstrative pronouns are those which not only point out an object, but yet represent it. As they are expressed very differently in the two languages, a table of these pronouns, and their various meanings, will follow.

| | | | | | |
|--------------|----------------------|----------|--------------------------------|-------|----------|
| Celui m. s. | } qui, or que, | The one | } that that or which. | that | } which. |
| celle f. s. | | the one | | that | |
| ceux m. p. | | the ones | | those | |
| celles f. p. | | the ones | | those | |

Qui is used when this relative pronoun is nominative to the following verb, and *que* when it is objective.

| | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| celui-ci, this or this one. | celui-là, that or that one. |
| celle-ci, this or this one. | celle-là, that or that one. |
| ceux-ci, these or these ones. | ceux-là, those or those ones. |
| celles-ci, these or these ones. | celles-là, those or those ones. |
| ceci, this. | cela, ce, that. |

N. B. The two last pronouns are used when *this* and *that* do not refer to any preceding noun, but are used absolutely; as, *this is good*; *that is bad*. Ceci est bon; cela est mauvais.

The pronouns *celui* and *celui-ci*, &c. must agree in gender and number with the substantives which they represent.

EXERCISE.

Your gun is not so handsome as the one that I have bought from Mr. B. What do you think of this beer? I think that this is not so good as that. That is not possible, because that which you tasted before cost me five dollars a barrel, while this cost me only two dollars. These boys are as noisy as those are still. The bookseller has different sorts of books, and he gives us those *for* which we ask. Look *at* these engravings, and see those. I like them very well, but that one is the best of all. The one which is so black has no effect; but the ones that you have showed me are very excellent. If you think this is tolerable, you will acknowledge that this is superior to it.

The demonstrative pronouns are expressed by *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles*, without *ci*, and *là*, when they are followed by a preposition.

Ex. *Celui pour qui je travaille, The one for whom I work.*

RULE. A personal pronoun followed by a relative pronoun, is always translated in French by a demonstrative pronoun of the same gender and number, and the relative pronoun expressed as usual.

Ex. *Celui qui pleure sera consolé,
He who weeps will be consoled.*

RULE. Sometimes the possessive case in English implies the possession of a thing understood. In French, that thing is represented by the demonstrative pronouns, *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles*, connected to the name of the person which possesses by the preposition *de*.

Ex. *Mes chevaux sont blancs et ceux du général sont gris,
My horses are white, and the general's are gray.*

EXERCISE.

He who wishes to be happy is not always so. He who will eat that trout, will pay *for* it. My ribbons are new, and my sister's are nearly worn out. I will give you my permission; but will you obtain your father's? She whom I will show you

will become a powerful princess. They who laugh will be punished. This picture is not that for which I offered ten dollars.

REMARK. *Celui-ci* and *celui-là*, *celle-ci* and *celle-là*, &c. are used for the pronouns *the latter* and *the former*. Those constructed with *ci* always mean *the latter*, and those to which *là* is added mean *the former*.

REMARK. It may be perceived, that in order to make a distinction between *this* and *that*, *these* and *those*, in French, we use the adverbs of place, *ci* and *là*, *here* and *there*, after the pronouns *celui*, *celle*, &c. This distinction is also made to prevent equivocation, with substantives preceded by the demonstrative adjective *ce*, *cel*, *celle*, *ces*, which answer both for *this* and *that*, *these* and *those*. *Ci* and *là* are added to the noun, and connected to it by a hyphen.

Ex. Ce pays-ci, ce pays-là,
 This country. that country.

EXERCISE.

I do not know which of those two houses to choose. This is too small, and that is too large. These two words have a different meaning; the former has more force, and the latter is more elegant. This city is more pleasant than the other. This street is very large. That man is queer (1) enough; he wants this picture, and will not take that one. That action is worthy of blame. The body perishes; the soul is immortal; yet all our cares are for that, while we neglect this. These laws are not better than the ones we had precedingly.

REMARK. *This*, *that*, *these*, *those*, preceding the verb *to be*, and used in reference to a following substantive, are translated in French by two prepositions, which serve to point out objects, viz. *voici* and *voilà*, generally meaning *behold*, and the verb *to be* is not expressed. These two words are principally used in showing the object, and when nothing concerning it has been said before.

Ex. Voici mon domestique, This is my servant.
 Voilà mes enfans, Those are my children.

In interrogative sentences, these pronouns are expressed

(1) Singulier.

by *ce*, placed after the verb, and followed by the adverb *là*.

Ex. Est-ce là vo tre fils? *Is this your son?*
Sont-ce là vos chevaux? *Are these your horses?*

EXERCISE.

This is my portion, and that is yours. Is this my watch? Was this your umbrella? Will that be your room? These are my uncle's conditions, and those are my father's. Is this your exercise? Are these his verses? are these your promises? This is my friend. These were my former comrades.

OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Indefinite pronouns are those which are of a vague and indeterminate nature.

They are generally divided in four classes.

FIRST CLASS.

Those that are never joined to a substantive.

ON. (Any thing which relates to that pronoun has been explained, page 137.)

| | |
|---------------|---|
| Quelqu' un | } <i>one, some body, some one, some, any.</i> |
| quelqu' une | |
| quelques uns | |
| quelques unes | |
| | } only applied to |
| | } individuals. |

This pronoun, when nominative to the verb, answers for *some body, some one, some*, and, if it relates to a substantive, the gender and number of which are known, must agree with it.

When objective, it answers for the same pronouns, but principally for *some or any, some few, a few*. As it implies a certain number, it requires the pronoun *en* to be used with the verb.

Ex. Avez-vous des plumes? *J'en ai quelques-unes,*
Have you pens? I have some, some few.

N. B. In many instances it is not represented in English, although used in French; but then it might be also suppressed in the French sentence, as it is merely used to give more force to the sentence.

ESSENTIAL OBSERVATIONS.—This pronoun cannot be

used in the negative sentences ; it is then represented for persons, by *personne*, and is entirely omitted for things.

If the sentence be interrogative and negative, it is employed as usual.

This pronoun, either subject or regimen, requires the verb to be put in the negative, but without *pas*. When *personne* is followed by an adjective, it is connected to it by the preposition *de*.

Personne, nobody, no one.

Ex. *Personne n'est venu, Nobody has called.*

Je ne connais personne de riche, I know no one who is rich.

Chacun } each, every one.
chacune }

Chacun, meaning the generality, is used but in the masculine. But used as a distributive pronoun, which refers to a substantive expressed in the sentence, it agrees with it in gender. Its sense excludes the plural.

Ex. *Chacun a ses défauts, Every body has his faults.*

Voyez séparément chacune de ces médailles,

Look at each of these medals separately.

Chacun, though always singular, may be followed sometimes by *son, sa, ses*, and sometimes by *leur, leurs*, which, in many instances, is embarrassing.

There is no difficulty in those phrases where *chacun* is not contrasted with a plural number ; for then *son, sa, ses* must be used ; as,

Donnez à chacun sa part,
Give to each his share.

RULE. In phrases where *chacun* is contrasted with a plural to which it refers, *son, sa, ses* must be employed, when *chacun* is placed after the regimen ; but *leur, leurs* must be used when *chacun* is placed before the regimen.

Ex. *Remettez ces médailles chacune en sa place,*
Return those medals each into its place.

Remettez chacune, en leur place, les médailles que vous avez prises,

Return each of the medals you have taken into its place.

Quiconque, whoever, whosoever.

Autrui, other people, others.

Autrui is only used in proverbial sentences, and after a preposition.

Rien, *nothing, not any thing.*

It requires the verb, if there be one in the sentence, to be put in the negative, but without *pas*. When joined to an adjective, it must be connected to it by the preposition *de*.

EXERCISE.

Some one told me yesterday that you are going to Europe. Every one was astonished at your determination. Have you a good pen? I have some there; choose a good one. I do not see any. I will find some good one for you. Some of these ladies will come with me. Each of the young ladies had a nosegay, and some of them gave me theirs. Whoever has studied the principles of an art knows that it is a study which requires much attention. No one knows me in this country. An egotist loves nobody, not even his own children. This speech is addressed to whoever is guilty. He finds no one honest. Do not retain the property of others. I have nothing in this world which attaches me to life. Do you see nothing good in this work? He applies himself to nothing fixed.

SECOND CLASS.

Those which are joined to a substantive.

Quelque, }
Quelques, } *some.*

The pronoun *some* is expressed by *quelque* when it signifies one out of several, or a few out of a larger number. It is evident, by the following example, that *some* in the singular, is not here a partitive article, for it is connected to an individual.

Ex. Vous trouverez peut être quelque personne obligeante,
You will perhaps find some obliging person.

In the plural it means a few.

J'ai là quelques livres. *I have there a few, or some books.*

Quelque cannot be used after negative verbs, with which the partitive article expressed by *de* is sufficient; but it is employed after negative interrogative verbs.

When *quelque* is joined to the word *chose*, these two words meaning *something* or *any thing*, take the masculine gender, and are connected with the following adjective by the preposition *de*.

Ex. J'ai quelque chose de bon. *I have something good.*

Chaque, *each, every.*

Quelconque, *whoever, whatever.*

This pronoun is always placed after the noun, and it must be observed, that it answers for the above English pronouns only, when they are used after the noun in English. If not, they are expressed as will be examined hereafter.

Certain
certaine
certains
certaines

} *certain and some, used instead of certain.*

This pronoun is used alike of persons and things, and is always placed before the substantive.

It may be used with the indefinite article *un, une*, in the singular, or the partitive article expressed by the preposition *de*, alone, in the plural.

Un, une, *a, or an.*

This indefinite pronoun or adjective is the same which has been given in the first part under the name of indefinite article. A very important observation will be placed here.

RULE. *A* or *an* is translated after a negative verb by the preposition *de*, unless the number *one* should be particularly understood by that article, or expressed in the sentence.

Ex. Je n'ai pas de sœur, { *I have not a sister.*

{ *I have no sister.*

Je n'ai pas une sœur, { *I have not a sister.*

{ *I have not one sister.*

EXERCISE.

You have read that in some ancient author. I will purchase some few pictures for this parlour. This has been written by some Frenchman or some Spaniard, because I see in it the style of a stranger. Every nation has, in (1) its turn, shone on the theatre of the world. No reason whatever will bring me to it. A certain man, who wished to show me his talents, spoke to me for (2) several hours. I will not send my goods to these merchants, because they have certain clerks who do not please

me. I have not a voice. My young sister has not a grammar. I cannot give you a cent. Do you know any thing new? I know nothing interesting.

THIRD CLASS.

Those which are sometimes joined to a substantive, and sometimes not.

| | | |
|---------|---|--------------------|
| nul | } | no, none. |
| nulle | | |
| aucun | } | no, none. |
| aucune | | |
| pas un | } | no, none, not one. |
| pas une | | |

These three pronouns have about the same signification. But when subject to the verb, *nul* is the only one which can be properly used in a general and absolute manner. *Aucun* and *pas un* are seldom used without being followed by a substantive. *Pas un* expresses a more complete exclusion.

When objective to the verb, *nul* is only employed when followed by a substantive. *Aucun* and *pas un* may be accompanied by a substantive or not; but in the latter case, as these pronouns are compounded with the number *un*, the pronoun *en* ought to be used with the verb.

Ex. Je n'en ai aucun, *I have none.*

Autre, other, else.

This pronoun is preceded by the articles; as

Un autre, *another, d'autres, others.*

Quelqu'un autre, *somebody else.*

The pronoun *one* after *another* is never expressed in French; but *en* must be used with the verb when *autre* is preceded by the indefinite or partitive article, or by a number.

Ex. J'en ai un autre, *I have another.*

En is not expressed if *autre* be preceded by the definite article.

Ex. J'ai l'autre, *I have the other.*

L'un l'autre, *each other, one another.*

If any preposition precedes the English pronouns *one another* or *each other*, that preposition must be placed in French between *l'un* and *l'autre*.

Ex. L'un contre l'autre, *against one another.*

L'un et l'autre, *both.*

These two words mark union, and require the verb which they govern to be in the plural.

Both is expressed by *l'un l'autre*, when it relates to two substantives, but when it refers to adjectives or other parts of speech it is translated differently, as will be shown in its proper place.

Même } *same.*
mêmes }

This pronoun is generally preceded by an article; it is of both genders.

Tel } *such.*
telle }
tels }
telles }

The indefinite article which generally follows this pronoun in English is placed before the word *tel* in French. If the substantive be plural, the word *tel* must be preceded by the partitive article expressed by *de*.

Ex. Un tel homme, *such a man.*

De telles personnes, *such persons.*

Such, used in exclamations, is translated by the adverb *si*, to which the article definite or partitive is prefixed.

Ex. C'est une si belle femme! *she is such a fine woman.*

Il a de si jolies fleurs! *he has such pretty flowers.*

Plusieurs, *several.*

As the word *plusieurs* implies a quantity, the pronoun *en* should be used with the verb, if the substantive determined by *plusieurs* has been expressed before in the sentence, and is not repeated after that pronoun.

Tout } *all, every, every thing.*
toute }
tous }
toutes }

Tout is used either alone, or with a substantive.

When employed alone, it signifies *every thing, all things*; which expressions are seldom translated differently, in French.

Ex. Tout nous abandonne au moment de la mort,
Every thing forsakes us at the moment of death.

In this case it may be used as an objective direct, and is then placed after the verb in simple tenses, and between the auxiliary and the verb in compound tenses.

Ex. Il a tout avoué, *he has confessed every thing.*

All followed by the relative pronoun *that*, either expressed or understood, is translated in French by *tout ce qui*, *tout ce que*, *all that which*.

Ex. Tout ce que j'ai, *All I have.*

When united to a substantive it is used either collectively or distributively.

Considered collectively, *tout* signifies the totality of a thing or of a species, and is then followed by the articles either definite or indefinite.

Ex. Toute la terre, *all the earth.*

Tous les corps célestes, *all the celestial bodies.*

Considered distributively, *tout* signifies *chaque*, each; in this case, it is not accompanied by the article.

Ex. Tout bien est désirable. *Every good is desirable.*

Tout means *any*; but this English indefinite pronoun cannot always be translated by *tout*, as will shortly be explained.

It is in that sense most generally applied to individuals of the singular number, and agrees in gender with the substantive to which it is joined.

Ex. Tout homme, *Any man.*
 Toute femme, *Any woman.*

Tous, *toutes*, in the plural, conveys the meaning of the English pronoun *every* with more force than *chaque*. It must then be followed by the article *les*.

Ex. Tous les matins, *Every morning.*

Every body, which is sometimes rendered by *chacun*, is more expressive when translated by *tout le monde*, *all the people*.

Tout, *Toute*, followed either by the definite article *le*, *la*, *les*, or the indefinite *un* or *une* represents in French the word *whole*, preceded by the same articles.

| | |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| Tout l'univers, | <i>The whole universe.</i> |
| Toute la France, | <i>The whole of France.</i> |
| Tout un état, | <i>A whole State.</i> |
| Toute une fortune, | <i>A whole fortune.</i> |

Tout is sometimes used as an adverb, and requires some explanations, which will be given with that part of speech.

Sometimes, also, it represents other words, and as its sense is then peculiar to the French Language, an explanation on this subject will be found amongst the gallicisms.

EXERCISE.

Not one of them has met your father. I have read many ancient authors, but not one of them speaks of the birth of that philosopher. No expression, no truth of design in that great work! Not one of these pictures displays great talents. None of his works will descend (1) to posterity. I did not speak to that man, for I was introduced to another. This one is tall, and the other was short. (2) Tell your story to other persons. They cheat each other. You will seldom see one of them without the other. They always dress like one another. They are both sick, and they both wish to be in the same room. This tragedy is the same that I was mentioning to you: but the other one is not by the same author. Do you know such a person? You will deliver this message to Mr. such a one. Why do you go with such men? Your brother is such a bad boy that I do not know how to correct him. Several ladies will come to-night, and every thing will be prepared. I was with him all day. All is in God, and God is in all. Take all that you can carry. I will tell you all that I know. Every vice is odious. The whole course of his life has been distinguished by generous actions. I have done every thing for you. Any man who loves truth seeks for it. He comes every day before five o'clock. I go to the country every summer, but I spend every winter in town. That book interested us during a whole year. The whole evening was spent in those innocent amusements.

FOURTH CLASS.

Of those which are followed by que.

Qui que, *whoever.*

Quoi que, *whatever.*

(1) (Passer.)

(2) (Petit.)

| | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| quel que, | { <i>whoever,</i> |
| tel que, | { <i>whatever.</i> |
| | <i>such as.</i> |
| quelque....que, | { <i>whatever,</i> |
| | { <i>whoever.</i> |
| tout....que, | <i>however.</i> |

The above pronouns are used in nearly the same circumstances, and follow the same rules as when they are not followed by *que*; viz. *qui* for persons, *quoi* for things, in a general sense; *quel, quelle....que, &c.* before the verb *to be*, when it refers to a substantive, and *quelque....que*, when before a substantive or an adjective.

These pronouns, except *tel que* and *tout que*, are followed by the subjunctive.

| | |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| Ex. Qui que ce soit, | <i>whoever it may be.</i> |
| quoi qu'il fasse, | <i>whatever he may do.</i> |
| quelle qu'elle soit, | <i>whoever she may be.</i> |
| tel qu'il est, | <i>such as he is.</i> |

| | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Quelque salaire qu'il reçoive, | <i>whatever salary he may receive.</i> |
| Quelque sage que vous soyez, | <i>however good you may be.</i> |
| Tout savant qu'il est, | <i>however learned he may be.</i> |

REMARK. *Quelque....que*, joined to a substantive, either alone, or followed by an adjective, takes the sign of the plural.

| | |
|--|--|
| Ex. Quelques richesses que vous ayez, | |
| <i>Whatever riches you may possess.</i> | |
| Quelques bonnes œuvres que vous fassiez, | |
| <i>Whatever good actions you may do.</i> | |

But when joined to an adjective separated from its substantive, it does not take the sign of the plural.

| | |
|--|--|
| Ex. Tous les hommes quelque opposés qu'ils soient, | |
| <i>All men, however opposite they may be.</i> | |

N. B. *Whatever*, at the end of a sentence, may be translated by *qui que ce soit*.

All sentences in which *ever* is used in the sense of *however*, are translated in French in the same manner as above.

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Ex. Quelque humble qu'il soit, | <i>Be it ever so humble.</i> |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|

EXERCISE.

Passenger! (1) Whoever thou be, contemplate this monu-

(1) *Passant.*

ment. I will speak to him, whoever he may be. Whoever it may be, I will not tremble. Whatever he may propose, accept it. Whatever he may say, do not believe him. However learned they may be, they will learn something from that man. However surprising this phenomenon may be, it is not against the laws of nature. You are not such as I desire.

CHAPTER V.

OF THE VERBS.

Agreement of the Verb with its Nominative.

RULE. When a verb has two nominatives, both of which are singular, it is put in the plural.

EXCEPTION. A verb with two nominatives in the singular, is not put in the plural when those two nominatives are joined together by the conjunctions *ou*, *comme*, *aussi bien que*, *autant que*.

Le roi ou son ministre le récompensera,
The king or his minister will reward him.

L'éléphant, comme le castor, aime la société de ses semblables,
The elephant, as well as the beaver, likes the society of his species.

When a verb has two nominatives in the singular number, connected by the conjunction *ni*, repeated before each, it ought to be observed whether the action expressed by the verb can or cannot be performed by the two substantives simultaneously. If one of the two be excluded, the verb and adjective or participle will be used in the singular; but if the two words perform the action together, the plural must be used.

Ex. Ni le comte ni le duc ne sera ambassadeur,
Neither the earl nor the duke will be ambassador.
Ni le vent ni la marée ne l'ont retenu,
Neither the wind nor the tide prevented him.

However, should the nominatives of the verb be of different persons, the verb ought to be put in the plural, although the two words be separated by *ou* or *ni*, &c.

The verb is put in the first person if one of the nominatives be a pronoun of that person. If there be no such pronoun the verb is put in the second person plural.

Ex. *C'est toi ou moi qui avons fait cela,*
It is thou or I who have done that.

EXERCISE.

My father and thy uncle will be here to-night. Either fear or inability prevented them from moving. The fear of death, or rather the love of life, is in the heart of every man. Alcibiades, as well as Plato, was among the disciples of Socrates. Lycurgus, like Solon, was a wise legislator. Euripides, as much as Sophocles, contributed to the glory of the Athenians. Neither Marshall S. nor General B. has been appointed president. Neither one nor the other pleases me. Neither prayers nor force have prevailed. It is you or he who have eaten the pies. Neither they nor he will speak against you.

OF COLLECTIVE NOUNS, OR NOUNS OF MULTITUDE.

Collective nouns are those which, under a singular form, have a plural signification.

They are of two kinds.

Those which by themselves express a number of individuals ; as, *an army, a nation, a family, &c.*, and those which express a certain number of the individuals specified in a following substantive ; as, *a part of, a number of, a troop of, &c.*

The former are called *general*, the latter *partitive*.

OF THE COLLECTIVE-GENERAL, NOMINATIVE TO THE VERB.

RULE. In English a noun of multitude or collective-general is often followed by a verb in the plural, although the word be in the singular number. In French the verb agrees in number with the noun and not with its signification. Thus the verb, after a collective-general used in the singular number, will be put in the singular.

Ex. *Ma famille est à la campagne,*
My family is or are in the country.

OF THE COLLECTIVE-PARTITIVE, NOMINATIVE TO THE VERB.

RULE. Should the collective be partitive, the verb would not agree with the word which determines the number, but with the substantive following.

Ex. La plupart des hommes sont ainsi,
The greatest part of men is or are so.
 Une infinité de peuple le croit,
An infinite number of people believe it.

The same rule is observed after adverbs of quantity, or any word expressing quantity. The verb then, instead of agreeing with these words, takes the number of the substantive following.

Ex. Beaucoup d'enfans jouent au lieu d'étudier,
Many children play instead of study.

After *un*, or *une*, followed by another substantive, connected with it by the preposition *de*, the verb may be either in the singular or in the plural, according to the sense of the English sentence.

Ex. C'est un de mes enfans qui a dîné avec vous,
It is one of my children who has dined with you.
 C'est un des enfans qui ont dîné avec vous,
It is one of the children who has dined with you.

The reason of this distinction is very simple, and determines the number of the verb in English as well as in French. In the first sentence I merely understand that *one* of my children has dined with you; in the second I speak of several children.

EXERCISE.

That captain cannot embark your goods to-day; his crew are all on shore. (1) My family are not here; they have gone to the country. The court will condemn this man to the state prison. A company of young Phœnicians danced before us. A troop of nymphs, crowned with flowers, swam behind her car. The great crowd of carriages which pass before my house disturb my sleep. Many poets think that poetry is the art of uniting pleasure with truth. It was one of my law-suits (2) which ruined me. It was one of my clerks who went with you. Voltaire is one of those authors who will ever be admired. I will show you one of the pictures I have bought.

(1) à terre.

(2) procès.

OF THE PLACE OF THE NOMINATIVE.

If the nominative of a verb be a personal pronoun, the learner may know how to place it, by applying the rules precedingly given.

If it be a noun it should be placed before the verb, except in the following instances.

It is a general principle in every language, that when several propositions are joined to form a sentence, the longest is always put last. Thus, when a verb is not followed by an objective, and the nominative is composed of several words, it is more elegant to put the nominative after the verb, either affirmative or negative.

Ex. Je ferai ce qu' a dit le commis de votre père,
I will do what your father's clerk has directed.
 Je vais où ne vont pas les rois,
I go where kings do not go.

In some places this order is indispensable.

1st. When the verb is a monosyllable.

Ex. Pouvez-vous me dire où est mon dictionnaire Français?
Can you tell me where my French dictionary is?

2nd. When the phrase begins by an adverb of place, or any word expressing manner or conclusion.

Ex. Ici repose la bonne Myrtaie, *Here lies the good Myrtaie.*
 Ainsi se termina cette affaire, *Thus ended that affair.*

3d. In incidental sentences which express that we are quoting somebody's words.

Ex. Je meurs innocent, a dit Louis xvi.
I die innocent, said Louis xvi.

4th. When the subjunctive is used to express a wish.

Ex. Puissent tous les peuples devenir libres!
May all people become free.

5th. When the substantive is both the nominative of a verb in the infinitive, and the objective of a preceding verb.

Ex. J'ai entendu chanter votre sœur, *I heard your sister sing.*

In interrogative sentences several things are to be observed.

1st. The nominative is placed after the verb when the objective of the verb is an interrogative pronoun placed at the head of the sentence.

Ex. Que dit votre ami? *what does your friend say?*
à quoi travaille votre sœur?
at what does your sister employ herself?

2d. When the phrase commences with one of those ad-verbs which are used to ask questions.

Ex. Où demeure le Docteur? *where does the Doctor live?*
combien demande cet homme? *what does that man ask?*
quand viendra votre sœur? *when will your sister come?*

3d. But in any other circumstances when an interrogation is made, and the nominative of the verb is a substantive, that substantive is to be placed at the head of the sentence in French, adding a pronoun for the interrogation, immediately after the verb.

Ex. Le roi, arrivera-t-il demain?
Will the king arrive to-morrow?

In all the above instances it would be as convenient to express the interrogation by the aid of the expression *est-ce que?* which requires the verb to be used in the affirmative way, as it is interrogative by itself.

Ex. Quand est-ce que vous écrirez votre exercice?
When will you write your exercise?

Should the verb be interrogative and negative, the same rules would be observed. However, such sentences^a are generally expressed by placing the nominative first, and using a pronoun after the verb, or by introducing *est-ce que?* and using the verb in the negative.

Ex. La servante, n'a-t-elle pas ouvert la porte?
Has not the servant opened the door?
Est-ce que la servante n'a pas fermé la fenêtre?
Has not the servant shut the window?
Qu'est-ce que votre frère n'a pas entrepris?
What has not your brother undertaken?

EXERCISE.

The watch that your father, who is so good, gave you, is excellent. The celebrated and unhappy Lavoisier discovered what the greatest philosophers, both ancient and modern, had not found out. After the French came the Hollanders; at their head was the valiant Roberts. Tell me where my pens are. Thus spoke the king, who had been silent until that moment. The general came first on horseback. (1) Then came the offi-

(1) à cheval.

cers, and at last the soldiers. We shall not conclude the bargain, replied the farmer, and may not your wife be sorry for it? What is the dog eating? Where are these children going? When will their master come? Will the business (1) be better next winter? Did your sister write to her friends in Salem? Had that child been punished when he came home? has not your daughter been sick?

OF THE PLACE OF THE OBJECTIVE.

The rule of the personal pronouns when they are objective to the verbs must be remembered.

RULE. When a substantive is used as the objective of a verb it must be placed after it.

This rule applies to all the pronouns except the personal, as was explained before, and the relative, which both in French and English come before the verb.

EXCEPTION. In an interrogative sentence, the objective is placed before the verb, when this objective is joined to an interrogative pronoun, or to an interrogative adverb of quantity. This rule is the same both in English and French.

Ex. Quel objet voyez-vous? *what object do you see?*
 combien d'enfans a-t-il? *how many children has he?*

In any other instance the substantive or pronoun (except the personal and relative,) must be put after the verb; and if, for convenience, it be placed at the head of the sentence, its sense must be repeated by a personal pronoun used with the verb.

Ex. Je savais cela, *that I knew.*
 ce livre, je l'ai lu, *that book I read.*
 Je connais l'enfant que vous instruisez,
I know the child whom you instruct.

RULE. A noun may be governed at once by two active verbs, either as an objective direct or indirect.

Ex. Ce général attaqua et prit la ville,
That general attacked and took the city.
 Il a donné ou vendu sa montre à mon frère,
He has given or sold his watch to my brother.

(1) *Affaires, plural.*

But in French, as well as in English, a substantive cannot relate to two verbs, if they are not followed by the same preposition.

EXERCISE.

Do you know my brother? Yes, I do know him. How much money can you give me? I cannot give you any. That I knew. That news I heard yesterday. Those men I once saw in Boston. Take this one; the other I will keep for myself. He struck and broke the glass at the same moment. That I do not know. That fact he did not affirm. That dress I never liked. That sum you do not possess.

OF THE USE OF THE TENSES OF THE FRENCH VERBS.

No special exercise has, thus far, been given on the irregular verbs, that the teacher might be at liberty to select for his pupil such as are of most frequent occurrence. It is preferable to learn first those that are more common in conversation, so as to induce the pupil to use them when he attempts to speak in French, and to enable him to understand the teacher, who must, as soon as possible, address him in that language. Simple phrases should be at first used for that purpose, and afterwards more difficult ones, according to the improvements of the scholar. However, as the pupil must now be acquainted with nearly all the French irregular verbs, these will be employed in preference to others in the exercises on the use of the tenses.

N. B. The learner should recollect what has been said, page 51, and following, particularly on the three ways of translating French verbs into English.

OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

The *infinitive* is that mood which simply expresses the meaning of the verb without either number or persons.

RULE. A verb which comes after another is put in the present of the infinitive, except the first verb be an auxiliary.

Ex. Je veux vous parler, *I want to speak to you.*

The pupil must be careful to distinguish between the verb in the infinitive and the past participle.

Ex. Je l'ai trouvée ouverte, *I found it opened.*

REMARK. In some instances the English past participle

is translated in French by the infinitive, as will be seen hereafter.

Prepositions in French govern the present of the infinitive, except *en*, in, which is followed by the participle present, then corresponding to the latin *gerund*.

The use of some prepositions will be explained with that part of speech.

Ex. Sans aller, *without going*. En allant, *in going*.

But *in*, before an English participle present, is rendered by *à*, and the infinitive, when the preceding verb expresses a lapse of time spent in performing the action which follows, or the mode of performing that action.

Ex. Il passe son tems à jouer, *He spends his time in playing*.
Vous prenez plaisir à le tour- *You take pleasure in vexing*
menter, *him*.

RULE. The English present participle is always expressed by the present of the infinitive in French, when it has for its nominative the objective of a preceding verb, as in this phrase.

Je l'ai vu peindre, *I saw him painting*.

We might also put that participle present in the imperfect, giving it a relative pronoun for its nominative.

Ex. Je l'ai aperçu qui jouait, *I perceived him who was playing*.

The English preposition *by*, and the adverb *while*, are translated by the preposition *en* with the participle present.

Ex. Je l'ai appris en étudiant jour et nuit,
I learned it by studying day and night.
J'y pensais en allant au magasin,
I thought of it while going to the store.

RULE. When the participle present, governed by a preposition, is preceded by a possessive adjective, such as *in spite of my going there, without his speaking*, the phrase is expressed by the subjunctive, as will be shown under that mood.

A participle present, used as an adjective to a noun, is generally expressed by a different word in French; as, *a dancing master*, un maître de danse; *a chattering woman*, une bavarde.

Many English present participles are used as nouns ; as *I do not like hunting*. These are generally rendered in French by a substantive or sometimes by an infinitive.

The English past participle is translated by the present of the infinitive in French, when the person or thing which suffered the action expressed by the past participle, is the objective of a preceding verb.

Ex. J'ai vu tuer ces hommes, *I saw those men killed*.

We construct the sentence as if we had said, *I saw somebody killing these men*. The word *somebody* is understood in the French sentence.

However, should the English past participle express an action which is past respecting the other verb, it must be translated by the same tense in French.

Ex. Je les vis morts, *I saw them dead*.

N. B. The infinitive in French expresses the action as present with regard to the preceding verb, while the past participle marks that the action was past.

Thus we would translate these two English sentences, viz.

I saw the door opened, by *Je vis ouvrir la porte*,
and I saw it open, by *Je la vis ouverte*.

In the former case, I saw the action of opening the door ; in the second, I merely saw the door after it was opened.

It might be objected that, since, in these instances, both the present and past participles are translated in French, by the present of the infinitive, there is no difference between an action performed and an action suffered. But then if any doubt should arise from using the present of the infinitive, either as an active or a passive verb, we have this infinitive accompanied by such words as to prevent any doubt. Likewise, when the verb is such that the past participle and the present of the infinitive have the same pronunciation, although spelt differently, the words used in expressing the idea, and accompanying this verb, must be such as to explain whether the action was past or present in its relation to the other verb.

As the participle, either present or past, forms in French a separate part of speech, all further explanations concerning it will be found under a chapter specially devoted to it.

EXERCISE.

You cannot prevent me from going to the ball. I wished to go out, and I found the door shut. I saw that pane of glass broken. I can see the soldiers without going out. I composed that song while walking, and I spent two hours in correcting it. In communicating my ideas to you, I do not wish to control yours. Do you find any difficulty in expressing your phrases in French? That poor little girl took a great deal of pains in writing her exercise, and yet it is full of mistakes. Is she not negligent in performing her duties? You can know that by asking your brother. He is an extraordinary man for making money. Who broke these glasses? yourself. Did you see them broken? no sir. I saw them afterwards, but you told me that it was you who had broken them. I know that tune; I heard it sung last night. I saw the door shut as I was passing by. I see that child beaten every day. I heard it said that Miss L. is going to France. When I went to see your sister I found her very much (1) afflicted.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

The indicative is that mood which simply declares or affirms a thing.

Present Tense.

RULE. The present of the indicative is used as explained, page 51st and following, and in the same circumstances as in English.

REMARK. It is also generally used instead of the preterite, in *orations* or *set discourses*, and in poetry, in order to represent a past action or event, as present to the mind of the hearers or readers.

RULE. In English, the verb is often put or understood in the future, after the conjunction *if*, *si*; in French, the verb is put in the present of the indicative, when in the future in English.

Ex. S'il vous dit cela, *If he tell you so.*

RULE. After *when*, the English verb is sometimes put in the present of the indicative. In French that verb is put in the future, if the action is not yet past, as will be

seen under that tense ; but it is put in the present of the indicative, if the phrase expresses an action which frequently takes place, or which is present.

Ex. Pourquoi ne le punissez-vous pas quand il fait cela ?
Why do you not punish him when he does so ?

EXERCISE.

Where are you going ? I am going home. What do you say ? I say nothing. Why do you not say any thing ? What does she eat ? She eats nothing. Yes she does eat something. Tell him, if he come, that I will give him three hundred dollars for his goods. We always make much noise when our cousins come. We take our tea when every body is here. Why would you not undertake that business when every thing promises the most complete success ?

OF THE IMPERFECT AND PRETERITES DEFINITE AND INDEFINITE.

The American or English pupil always finds great difficulty in translating in French the English preterite, which is expressed according to circumstances, by any of the above three tenses. It is thought that the following explanations, and particularly the rule succeeding it, will remove this difficulty entirely, as it always has had the same success.

Imperfect Tense.

The imperfect is used to express an action that was going on when another action took place. The imperfect determines nothing with regard to the commencement, duration or end of the action which even may not have been completed since the second action happened. For that reason it is called imperfect.

Ex. Je dînaï quand vous entrâtes,
I was dining when you came in.

It must be observed that the English sentence is, in such circumstances, expressed by the preterite of the verb *to be*, followed by a present participle, as in the above example, *I was dining*, (*were* is used in the plural.) Therefore, any action expressed by the participle present, preceded by *was* or *were*, must be translated by the imperfect in French.

The imperfect is also used to express an action which frequently took place at a time either determined or not by the sense of the sentence. The English phrase in a similar instance, is constructed with the preterit of the verb *to use*.

Ex. Je lisais beaucoup autrefois,
Formerly, I used to read a great deal.

A verb may express an action, which, although not repeated, may continue a very long period. For instance, the verbs *to be, to live, to rain, &c.* If I mean to say that the actions of *being or living, raining*, continued for some time, I must express the verb by the imperfect. The same preterit, *used*, is in this instance also introduced in the English sentence, or at least may be understood.

Ex. César était un grand homme,
Cæsar was a great man.
Je ne savais pas cela,
I did not know that.
Cet homme demeurait ici,
That man used to live here.

I do not mean that Cæsar was a great man, once in his life, but I intend to convey the idea that his character was that of a great man; that he used to be a great man.

And in the second sentence, I do not say that *I did not know that*, only in one circumstance, but I mean that I had been a long time without knowing it; it was habitual for me not to know it.

Preterit Definite.

The preterit definite expresses an action which took place but once, and was entirely completed. That action may be of short or long duration, but in both cases, it is fully expressed, from beginning to end, by this tense. It must be observed that the preterit definite is only used when the time at which the action took place has entirely elapsed. Thus we cannot use it to express what happened to-day; but we can only employ it for what happened yesterday, or at any other previous time. However, from the above principle, this tense cannot be accompanied by the words, *this week, this month, this year, this century, &c.*, as that time is not entirely completed.

Preterit Indefinite, or Compound Tense.

The preterit indefinite, or compound tense, expresses an action entirely completed, but at a time of which there yet remains some part not elapsed. Therefore, it is used instead of the preterit definite for actions which took place to-day, or when the words *this week, this month, &c.* are in the sentence.

Ex. J'ai rencontré votre père ce matin,
I met your father this morning.

The preterit indefinite is also used in speaking of any thing, action or event, the effects of which are still existing, or thought to be existing. For instance, I would put the verb in the preterit indefinite, if I wished to inform a person of some news; if I inquire with regard to any occurrence; or if I am on the spot where the event or action took place; the principal use of this tense being to express that the effect or interest of a past event is still existing.

Ex. Les Russes ont gagné une grande bataille,
The Russians have gained a great battle.
Avez-vous conclu votre marché?
Did you conclude your bargain?
Henri quatre a couché dans cette chambre,
Henry the Fourth has slept in this room.
Les Romains ont bâti les murailles que vous voyez,
The Romans have built the walls that you see.

N. B. The scholar must not mind whether the question is asked, or the answer is given with the auxiliary verb *to do* instead of *to have*. Some explanation here is of absolute necessity.

RECAPITULATION OF THE ABOVE EXPLANATIONS.

The imperfect must be used,

1. For an action expressed by the preterit of the verb *to be*, either *was* or *were*, and a participle present;
2. For an action expressed by the preterit *used*, followed by an infinitive;
3. For any action which was frequently repeated or continued for a certain time, in which case the preterit *used*, if not expressed, can be understood;
4. For any action which was going on, while another took place.

The preterit definite or simple tense must be used,

For an action which took place but once, and was entirely completed at a time of which nothing remains to elapse.

The preterit indefinite, or compound tense must be used,

1. When the action took place at a time which is not yet entirely passed, and particularly to-day ;

2. When the effects of that action are still existing, or are thought to be existing.

RULE. Should any difficulty occur, two questions will remove it, viz.

Was the action going on?

Did the action take place?

The affirmative answer to these questions will indicate, in the former case, the use of *the imperfect*; and in the latter, the use of one of the *preterites*; *definite*, if all is perfected; *indefinite*, if the effects are still existing.

Thus we may say,

Les Russes ont gagné une grande bataille,

The Russians have gained a great battle,

La rivière a débordé,

The river has overflowed its banks,

If these events are of recent occurrence and of present interest. But,

Les Russes gagnèrent, &c.

La rivière déborda,

If some subsequent cause has changed the effect resulting from these events.

Therefore, in *history, narrations, novels, &c.* the preterit definite (also called historical perfect) ought to be used.

And in *conversation, news, questions, trade, and business*, relating to events or actions of an actual interest, the preterit indefinite must be used.

Respecting those actions which may continue for a certain time, without being repeated, they are sometimes, and without any apparent distinction, expressed by any one of the three past tenses, as well as by another.

Ex. *Il pleuvait, il plut, il a plu hier,*

It rained yesterday.

Cet homme demeurait, demeura, a demeuré ici,
That man lived here.
 Charles douze était, fut, a été un grand homme,
Charles the Twelfth was a great man.

But it ought to be observed, that when one of these tenses is used instead of another, the mind always presents or receives the idea according to the precise meaning of the tense in which it is expressed.

If I say *il pleuvait, il demeurait*, I allude to a certain time, without expressing the beginning, duration or end of the action; *Charles était*, I allude to his life time, without thinking of his death. The preterit, in such an instance, would mean, that some further circumstance has put an end to those events or actions.

A very important observation must be made on this subject.

Since the imperfect determines nothing with regard to the beginning, duration or end of the action, this tense cannot be used if the verb is followed by an adverb of time or any other expression determining any of these three points. Thus I must say, *Il plut pendant deux heures*, it rained for two hours; *Il vécut long tems*, he lived a long time; *le Cardinal Richelieu fut toute sa vie craint et haï par les grands, qu'il avait humiliés*, Cardinal Richelieu was all his life feared and hated by the great whom he had humbled. *Il pleuvait, il vivait, il était* would be very improper in such a case; but I would say, *il a plu, il a vécu, il a été*, if I wish to establish a kind of relation between those events and the present time.

Speaking of physical qualities we use the imperfect; for, when we say, *he was tall and well made*, we necessarily understand, *when alive*, which idea requires the verb to be expressed by the imperfect. It might be objected that we cannot say, *he was good or bad*, without alluding to the life time of a person; but to this it will be replied that we consider moral qualities as immortal, and we can speak of the character as still existing, while the body has perished.

We will then say, *Alexandre était d'une taille moyenne*, Alexander was of a middle stature.

But faithful to our rule on the imperfect, we must say, *Clara, fut belle jusqu'à sa vingtième année*, Clara was handsome until her twentieth year, as the duration of the time is here determined.

RULE. In English the verb is often put or understood in the subjunctive after the conjunction *if*, *si*. In French, that verb is put in the *imperfect* of the indicative, when in the *subjunctive*, in English; it agrees with its nominative.

Ex. *Ji j'étais malade, If I were sick.*

RULE. After *when*, the English verb is sometimes put in the preterit indefinite; in French, that verb is put in the future anterior when the action is not yet past; but it is put in the preterit indefinite, if it conveys the idea of an habitual action, which, in English, is expressed by the corresponding tense.

Ex. *Quand il a composé des vers il me les lit,*
When he has composed verses, he reads them to me.

The length of these rules may seem to destroy their benefit; but to the scholar, who is every day perplexed about the use of the past tense in French, and who must overcome this difficulty chiefly by practice, they will, it is presumed, appear more satisfactory than any thus far given.

EXERCISE.

My cousin was learning his lesson when you interrupted him. I was going to market when I met *with* your sister. She was looking *at* me when I perceived her. Who was singing in the room when I entered? I did not know that you were so industrious. It is said that this man was very strong, but I do not think that he was wicked. We used to go to the theatre last year, nearly every night, but now we always remain at home. I thought that you did not like to go out. He was young and he had no experience; he was easily deceived. He was sick when he left New-York, and died at (1) sea. I took much pleasure in the society of my young comrades; we saw many curious things; we gathered flowers; we ran all day, and we came home very late. It rained this morning, and we could not go out. Did you know your lesson yesterday? Pepin looked at them, rushed *down* into the arena, drew his sword and cut *off* the head of the lion. I have performed much work this year. What did you tell me this afternoon? I did not hear you. We laughed a great deal to-day. This island was inhabited during several years by the savages. That child was born on the tenth of April, 1827. Where are the men who built those pyramids? Peter the Great conquered, at Pulta-

va, Charles the Twelfth, who thought himself invincible. When did he write his verb? He wrote it last night. No, he wrote it this morning. There my companions left me, and I opened the door of the castle. I saw nothing curious in the first rooms that I crossed. The most gloomy silence reigned in that place, which seemed to be rather the abode of the dead than of the living. I thought at first that I should find nobody in the whole house, but as I was going to open a small door, which was in one of the corners of a large parlour, I heard the voice of a person who was reading. I then knocked; a young man came and opened the doors to me. He asked me what I wanted of him, with such a severe look, that he frightened me. However, I examined him with attention. His eyes were black and expressive; his looks, fixed on my person, seemed to wait for an answer, which he appeared to be anxious to receive. I cast my eyes on the book which he held in his hands, but it was written in characters that were unknown to me. My father writes to me that he has been so successful in his business that he is going to leave off. He sent two ships to China, and gained on both about two hundred thousand dollars. Charles the Tenth was crowned on such a day. That man died in August last. The duties on wine have been increased. Charlemagne was crowned Emperor in the year eight hundred. I read in the newspapers that the Russians have crossed the Balkan mountains. Where did you put my penknife? Did you compose the music or the words? The weather was very bad yesterday. It rained all the morning, and it snowed afterwards. My daughter was very small until her eighteenth year; but then she grew tall. (1.) He was young, handsome, and rich, and, notwithstanding those advantages, she refused him. General Dugommier was beloved by his soldiers; he was killed at the battle of the black mountain. If you should know how to make that, you would do it. If you should tell him your opinion, he would listen to you. What would she do, if you should pretend to be dissatisfied? When he has offended his father, he is sorry for it. When he has finished his task, he plays with the other boys.

OF THE PLUPERFECT AND PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

There is some difficulty in distinguishing the preterit anterior from the pluperfect. But the explanation which follows will be sufficient to help the learner.

(1) Grandir.

The first thing to be observed, is, that these two tenses have nothing in common with the other past tenses, since, being compounded of a preterit, they both correspond to the English compound, formed from the preterit *had*, and the past participle.

It is then only the English compound tense formed with *had* that is to be translated by the *pluperfect* or the *preterit anterior*.

The pluperfect being a compound of the imperfect, is, like that tense, used to express an action that was frequently repeated ; it then generally accompanies the imperfect.

Ex. Dès que j'avais déjeuné J'allais à la chasse,

As soon as I had breakfasted, I used to go a hunting.

When the action is not repeated, the only difference between the preterit anterior and the pluperfect is this :

The pluperfect expresses a thing as having taken place at any period antecedent to the time when another thing happened.

Ex. J'avais soupé quand il entra,

I had supped when he came in.

Two hours or two minutes may have intervened between my supper and the time when he came in, but the exact length of the time is not determined.

The preterit anterior not only expresses a thing that has taken place before another which is also past, but that the thing took place immediately before the other.

Thus, *J'avais fini à midi*, signifies, that *I had finished at any time before twelve o'clock* ; while *J'eus fini à midi*, signifies, that *I had done at twelve precisely*.

The use of the preterit anterior will show that you must translate by this tense, an English verb preceded by the words, *as soon as*, *ausitot que*, *d'abord que*, *dès que*, *after*, *après que*, *when*, *lorsque*, *quand*, which are never used with the pluperfect, unless the verb expresses an action reiterated.

EXERCISE.

I had already mentioned it, when you spoke of it. As soon as I had seen her, I visited my friend. When we had exhausted our provisions we did not know what to do. We had gone to that place before, but we had forgotten the road, and as soon as our guide had left us we took another way. We had

already walked for several hours, when we perceived our mistake and turned back. When we had walked nearly the same length (1) of time we stopped. Formerly, when I had read a book I knew all it contained, but now I always forget it. When I was a boy, as soon as I had done my lessons I used to go out. When he had dined, he used to sleep, and that habit injured his health. Last year, as soon as they had arrived, they turned back, but now they cannot do so.

OF THE FUTURE TENSE.

Future Simple.

This tense is also used in French as it is in English, in observing the exceptions respecting *when*, which requires the verb to be put in the future in French if the action is not yet passed.

Ex. Vous m'éveillerez quand j'aurai assez dormi,
You will wake me up when I have slept enough.

EXERCISE.

Give him these twenty dollars when he asks for them ; and if he ask for more, do not give him any. My father always takes me with him when he goes to the Exchange. I will go with you, if you go to church to-day. Punish him when he does so. You will give him his tea only when he has learned his lesson. I will pay the painter when he has finished my portrait. We will pay your bill when you bring it to us.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

The conditional is the mood which affirms on condition. The English auxiliary verbs, *should*, *would*, and *could*, which have been put in correspondence with the French conditional, are not always translated in French by this mood. The scholar may observe that those auxiliaries are also used in the subjunctive mood in English, and then are not translated by the conditional in French. He should likewise notice what has been said of the subjunctive when preceded by the conjunction *if*, *si*, (see page 185) and may then pass to the following observations.

N. B. As the use of those auxiliaries will be explained

(1) Espace.

in a special chapter, I shall here treat only of their relation with the French conditional.

This mood does not convey any idea of obligation whatever; it merely expresses what the nominative of the verb would be pleased to do, if a certain thing should happen; or a certain state in which it is thought that the nominative of the verb would find himself if such a condition was fulfilled.

Therefore, the sign *should*, when it expresses obligation, and *could*, if used to signify *to be able*, cannot be translated in French by the conditional.

As for *could*, it is almost always translated by the French word *pouvoir*, as will be seen hereafter.

There is a second conditional past which may be used with all the verbs, and an instance of which has only been given with the verb *to have*, page 45; it is formed by the imperfect of the subjunctive of the auxiliary verb and the past participle; as, *J'eusse parlé*, instead of *J'aurais parlé*. This past tense, very often employed in a refined style, is seldom used in conversation.

EXERCISE.

I would go to Manhattanville to-day, if the weather were fine. Would you not pay him if he was more polite? I should certainly do it, but he is too insolent. How could you soften that flinty heart? Could sincerity displease you? Why would she not come, if she has time? Thou wouldst have slept all day. Would not your brother have played? Would we have praised his incivility? Would that person set off again without taking leave of us? Could they foresee their misfortunes? I should still cherish life. Should we build our house upon that plan? Would they present themselves? Could that judge absolve the guilty? Would you not have introduced me to them, if you had known me then? They would not do so if they could foresee the consequences of it.

OF THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The imperative is that mood which commands, exhorts, entreats, or permits. It is a present, with respect to the injunction, and a future with respect to the thing enjoined.

That mood has no first person in the singular, as it is impossible for a man to command himself. It must be ob-

served, however, that in writing, or on the stage, a man who is obliged to communicate to others his most secret thoughts, will speak to himself in the imperative mood; but then the first person plural is used instead of the singular. If the verb be followed by an adjective, that adjective is used in the singular.

The first and second persons of the imperative admit of no nominative pronouns.

The learner must be careful not to use the second person singular instead of the plural, as the singular can be employed only in the circumstances explained in the note, page 43.

EXERCISE.

Let us go down. Speak (you) to me. Read (you) those letters. Be (ye) still. Know (thou) that God reads the secrets of thy heart. Let her go out. Let him write to his father. Let him praise himself. Punish thyself for thy faults, but do not attribute to thyself the faults of others. Know (ye) how to live and you will know how to die.

OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The subjunctive is that mood which expresses a subordination to what precedes; with this dependance it forms sense, but otherwise not.

It might be thought from this, that any verb is in the subjunctive mood when it is subordinate to a preceding verb, but as this is not always the case, the circumstances in which this mood is used, must be examined with attention.

The subjunctive does not affirm the action; it merely indicates it.

The verb is therefore put in the subjunctive, when the action which it expresses is in subordination to a verb meaning *wish, desire, want, obligation, duty, commandment, expectation, consent, doubt, fear or admiration*, as these verbs do not affirm that the action or event which is *wished, desired, commanded, feared, &c.* will take place, or has taken place; but they merely indicate that action or event as the end or object of the *wish, commandment, consent, fear, &c.*

Ex. Je désire, je commande, je consens, je m' étonne, j'ai besoin, j'attends, je doute qu'il vienne, je crains qu'il ne vienne,

I wish he would come; I command, consent that he should come;

I am astonished at his coming; I want him to come; I expect that he will come; I doubt whether he will come; I fear lest he should come.

REMARK. The verbs *croire*, to believe, *penser*, to think, *dire*, to say, *soutenir*, to maintain, *gager*, *parier*, to bet, *imaginer*, to imagine, *soupçonner*, to suspect, *présumer*, to presume, *voir*, to see, *sentir*, to feel, *espérer*, to hope, and others expressing affirmation and used affirmatively, do not require the subjunctive, as they do not express a sufficient doubt.

Ex. Je, pense, je crois, je soutiens, je dis, je gage, je parie, j'imagine, je soupçonne, je présume &c. qu'il fait ou fera cela.

I think, believe, maintain, say, bet, imagine, suspect, presume, &c. that he does or will do that.

These verbs do not affirm, it is true, but they induce the hearer or reader to consider the action which follows them, as almost certain.

Suppose for instance, that I inquire for a person. If they answer me, *I think, I believe, I presume, I say, I bet, I imagine, I suspect, &c. that he will soon return*, that answer expresses a possibility, and the object of the person who speaks is to make me believe, that the other person will soon return.

It is just the same as if he had said *he is to come*, adding, *I presume, I believe, I think*. The same inversion cannot be made with the other verbs, without changing entirely the meaning of the sentence; when a man says, *I wish he would come*, you cannot understand *he will come, I wish*.

A verb is also put in the subjunctive mood, after impersonal verbs, and particularly, after *to be*, when used impersonally, and followed by an adjective, when these verbs or adjectives convey an idea of *wish, want, obligation, duty, &c.*

Ex. Il importe il est bon, prudent, convenable que vous alliez,
It is important, it is good, prudent, fit that you should go.

But if the first verb or the adjective have a positive signification, the second verb must be put in the indicative.

Ex. Il arrive qu'il a perdu, *it happens that he has lost.*

Il est vrai, sûr évident qu'il perdra,

It is true, sure, evident that he will lose.

But if these verbs are used in the interrogative or nega-

tive way, the subjunctive is required, as there is no affirmation of the second verb, and the whole sentence is either doubtful or negative.

Ex. Pensez-vous qu'il sorte ?

Do you think he will go out ?

Je ne crois pas qu'il sache cela,

I do not think he knows that.

REMARK. Sometimes a verb is used in the interrogative way, not with a view to ask a question, but in order to give more force to the sentence, or in an exclamation ; then the affirmation, far from being destroyed, is still stronger, and the verb is used in the indicative.

Ex. Oubliez-vous que je peux vous punir ?

Do you forget that I can punish you ?

The subjunctive is also used after a relative pronoun, the antecedent of which is a superlative relative, or a word used as a superlative relative, or an indefinite pronoun, or adverb having a negative sense.

Ex. C'est le plus beau navire qu'on ait jamais construit,
It is the finest ship they ever have constructed.

La première giraffe vivante qui ait été amenée en France,
The first cameloopard that has been brought alive in France.

The subjunctive is also required by many conjunctions and by some of the indefinite pronouns, of the fourth class, on account of their conveying a doubtful idea. (See page 169.)

Instead of here giving a list of such words, it has been judged better to introduce them in examples which will be found after the following observations.

When a verb subordinate to another is joined to it by a relative pronoun, it is put in the subjunctive, if the action which it expresses is vague and indeterminate.

Thus I will say,

J'épouserai une femme qui me plaira,

I will marry a woman who may please me,

If I speak of a woman, who, I am certain, will please me.

J'épouserai une femme qui me plaise,

I will marry a woman who may please me,

If I mean that I intend that she should please me.

It is not necessary to the use of the subjunctive in French that the English verb should be in the subjunctive, but the

English expression, whatever it may be, must be translated by the subjunctive, if preceded by the above verbs, conjunctions, &c.

Before giving examples on all the above rules, it will be necessary to understand which of the four tenses of the subjunctive mood should be used according to circumstances.

IMPORTANT REMARK. Notwithstanding all that has been said on the use of the subjunctive, it should be observed, that the second verb must be put in the infinitive, and not in the subjunctive, if the nominative of the second verb be the same person who *wishes, commands, fears, &c.*

Ex. Je veux, être obéi, *I wish that I may be obeyed.*

There are, besides, many verbs, particularly those expressing *command, consent, obligation, duty, &c.* which may be followed by the infinitive instead of the subjunctive. This happens when the objective of the first verb is the one performing the act expressed by the second. The infinitive is then preceded by the preposition *de*.

Ex. Je lui permets d'aller, *I permit him to go.*

OF THE USE OF THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The action expressed by the subjunctive, is supposed to be either present, future, or past. If it be present or future, the verb is put in the simple tenses, and if it be past the compound tenses are used.

In the former case, the present of the subjunctive is used after the present and future absolute and anterior of the indicative, but after any other tense, the verb is put in the imperfect of the subjunctive.

In the latter, the preterit or compound of the present subjunctive mood, is used after the present or preterit definite, future, simple, and compound; after the other tenses the pluperfect of the subjunctive is used.

EXAMPLES.

| | | | | | |
|----------------|---|-----------------|----------------|---|--------------|
| Je veux, | { | quelque ailles. | Je veux, | { | quelque fois |
| Je voudrai, | | | J'ai voulu, | | |
| J'aurai voulu, | | | J'aurais voulu | | |

| | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| Je voulais, | } que tu allas- ses. | Je voulais, | } que tu fusses allé. |
| je voulais, | | je voulais, | |
| j'ai voulu, | | j'ai voulu, | |
| j'avais voulu, | | j'avais voulu, | |
| je voudrais, | | j'eus voulu, | |
| j'aurais voulu, | | je voudrais, | |
| | | j'aurais voulu, | |

REMARK. The present of the subjunctive is always employed when the second verb expresses an action which exists at all times.

Dieu a entouré les yeux de tuniques fort minces, afin qu'on puisse voir à travers,

God has surrounded the eyes with very thin tunics, that we may see through them.

The imperfect and its compound of the same mood, are used after all the tenses when the subjunctive is followed by an expression which marks some condition.

Ex. Je doute que vous fassiez cela, si je ne vous y forçais,
I doubt whether you would do that if I should not compel you.

OBSERVATION. When in the third person of the subjunctive, a substantive is the nominative of the verb, the *que* is placed before the noun.

Ex. Il veut que mon cousin vienne, *He wants my cousin to come.*

GENERAL EXAMPLES ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

Je veux que vous fassiez cela,
I want you to do that, (that you should do.)
Ja désire qu'il vienne,
I wish him to come, (that he would come,)
Pensez-vous qu'on ait commencé ?
Do you think they have begun ?

The verb *to wish*, followed by *would*, or *could*, is generally used in the conditional in French, and the second verb is then put in the imperfect, or pluperfect of the subjunctive according to the rule.

Ex. Je voudrais qu'il revint bientôt, *I wish he would come soon.*
Il voudrait que nous l'eussions aidé, *He wishes that we had helped him.*
Je voudrais être chez moi, *I wish I was home.*

| | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Dites-leur qu'ils m'attendent, | <i>Tell them to wait for me.</i> |
| Je doutais qu'il vous plaignit, | <i>that they would wait.</i> |
| Pensiez-vous qu'il me l'eût dit, | <i>I doubted whether he</i> <i>would pity you.</i> |
| Il est bon que vous le sachiez, | <i>Did you think he had</i> <i>told me of it.</i> |
| Il importait que vous vous reti- | <i>It is good for you to know</i> <i>that.</i> |
| rassiez, | <i>It was important for you</i> <i>to withdraw.</i> |
| C'est le meilleur vin que vous, | <i>It is the best wine you</i> <i>ever drank.</i> |
| ayiez bu, | |
| quelque opinion que soit la vôtre, | <i>Whatever opinion may</i> <i>be yours.</i> |

By a peculiarity of the French language, which will be spoken of again with the adverbs, a verb used in the subjunctive, after verbs expressing fear, must take the negative *ne*, although it has an affirmative sense.

Ex. Je crains qu'il ne tombe, *I fear lest he should fall.*

Observe that *pas* is never added to the verb in the above case, but must be placed after it, if it be negative.

Ex. Je crains qu'il ne tombe pas, *I fear he should not fall.*

EXAMPLES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER CONJUNCTIONS.

| | | | |
|------------|---|---------------------|--|
| afin que | } je lise j'aie lu je lusse j'eusse lu | that, in order that | } I read I should read I should read |
| pour que | | so that | |
| avant que | | before | |
| en cas que | | in case that | |
| bien que | | although | |
| encore que | | although | |
| quoique | | although | |
| pourvu que | } suppose que | provided that | } |
| soit que | | either | |

N. B. The simple conjugation *que*, governs the subjunctive when used elliptically for any of the above conjunctions.

These conjunctions are followed by any of these four tenses, according to the sense of the sentence and the tenses of the preceding verb.

Other conjunctions are used, either with the indicative

or with the subjunctive, according to the intention of the person who speaks.

The conjunctions *a moins que*, unless, *de peur que*, *de crainte que*, for fear that, require the verb in the subjunctive to take the negative *ne*, although affirmative; but *par* is added if the verb be negative.

A moins qu'il ne m'envoie mes livres,

Unless he should send me my books.

De peur que, de crainte qu'il ne meure,

For fear he should die.

Until, before a verb, is always expressed by *jusqu'à ce que*, and governs the subjunctive.

Jusqu'à ce qu'elle s'en aille,

Until she goes away.

Without my going there, in spite of his trying, are all expressions translated by the subjunctive in the following manner.

Passez-le sans que j'y sois, (though I may not be.)

Do it without my being there.

Quoique je le lui aie dit,

In spite of my telling him.

EXERCISE.

When I want him to write, you command him to go out. What do you want me to do? I want you to be still. I doubt whether you will succeed. Do you permit me to go to the ball? I believe you are a man of genius. Do you think he is a steady man? I bet he is a German. Do you suspect him to be guilty of such an infamous action? I hope you will write me when you arrive in France. Do you not maintain, that, your brother will be more successful than all his predecessors? I say that he deserves his punishment. Do you wish that he should be kept in? (1) It is prudent for you to escape. It is true that he is extremely negligent, but is it ascertained, (2) that, he is not sick? When it happens that he wins a game, he is overjoyed. That army was the finest that a general ever commanded. He was the most ambitious man who has ever existed. I know nobody who translates Hebrew as easily as he. Show me a way, which may lead me to Paris. I wish I was able to oblige you. She wishes she was a queen. I command you to stay, and I do not permit him to move.

(1) Retenir.

(2) Prouver.

Where did you decide that he should go? Tell him to go where he wishes to stay. They wished me to deal with her, but I refused. Did you doubt that he would pay me? If I were you, I would tell him to do it, or to go away, and if you dare not say it, I will tell him not to speak to you to-morrow. We wanted him to clean that room, but he answered that he did not think fit for him to obey us. I do not allow you to speak. Do not permit the wicked to be so powerful. It would have been more proper for you to have seen him before. Did he think that the bargain had been concluded? Whatever reason you may give, you will be punished. I fear lest you should be deceived. The king feared that the army was not attached to him. You feared that he had not found him. Do they believe that I have not spoken to her? I said that, in order that every one should pity him. Although he appears to be very smart, yet he is very dull. If you would be ready to-morrow, I would be contented. Unless you should join this class, I do not know how I could take you. His father wanted to send him to Europe lest he should be a fireman. He stayed all day at home for fear that you might miss him. Can you not finish your business without my being here continually? In spite of his going there ten times a day, he is nevertheless completely cheated.

Many more things remain to be said on the verbs, but as most of these rules belong to the gallicism more than to the syntax of the language, they will all be placed in the third part of this work, which, it is intended, shall show how to express in French the numerous anglicisms, and how to use the gallicism with propriety.

CHAPTER VI.

OF THE PARTICIPLE.

A definition of the participle has been given in the first part. (Page 90.)

The participle is either present or past.)

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

The participle present has either the sense of a verb, or that of an adjective.

It is invariable when used as a verb, but agrees in gender and number with the substantive to which it relates, when used as an adjective. It forms its feminine by the addition of a mute *e*, and its plural by *s*.

It is a verb when it expresses an accidental action, and an adjective when it expresses a permanent qualification.

When I say,

J'ai vu cette femme obligeant ses amis,

I saw that woman obliging her friends,

I speak of an action which has taken place. But if I say,

Cette femme est obligeante,

That woman is obliging,

I do not intend to express any action, but I merely wish to attribute to her the quality of being obliging.

EXERCISE.

The state of nature is that of the savage living in the desert, but living with his family, knowing his children, and loving them. She answered me with a trembling voice. They uttered piercing cries. That mountain being very high, and thus, commanding a vast extent of country, was very well calculated for our observations. He stood in his place, and looking at me with threatening eyes, he told me to leave him. I saw them cringing at my feet. She had a gown glittering with gold and precious stones. The persons whom you saw with us are people fearing God and loving virtue. Did you not see them coming to us?

OF THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

The past participle is also considered sometimes as a verb, and sometimes as an adjective, but the rules on its agreement being quite mechanical, will be laid down without entering into any explanation.

The feminine is formed with a mute *e*, and the plural with *es*.

RULE 1. The past participle, employed without an auxiliary, agrees in gender and number with the word to which it relates.

Ex. Une muraille peinte, *A painted wall.*
 Des enfans gâtés, *Spoiled children.*
 Des marchandises vendues, *Sold goods.*

EXCEPTION. The French past participles, *attendu*, on account of, *vu*, considering, *supposé*, supposing, *excepté*, except, *compris*, included, *ci-joint*, *ci-inclus*, enclosed, are invariable when they precede the substantive which they qualify, as they may then be considered as prepositions.

Ex. *Attendu les événemens,* *On account of the events.*

Vous trouverez ci-joint mes *You will find, here enclosed, my*
deux lettres, *two letters.*

The participle *été* is always invariable.

RULE 2. When the past participle is joined to the auxiliary *avoir*, it must agree in gender and number with its objective direct, but only when that objective is placed before the participle.

N. B. The objective direct may be either a personal or a relative pronoun.

Observe that the past participle, joined with *avoir*, never agrees with its *nominative*, its *objective indirect*, or with its *objective direct*, when this latter is placed AFTER the participle.

But above all, let this participle, when joined to *avoir*, be invariable, if it has no objective direct.

Ex. Envoyez-moi mes livres, si vous les avez lus,
Send me my books, if you have read them.
 Nous avons vu ces dames et nous leur avons parlé,
We have seen those ladies, and we have spoken to them.
 Regardez les étoffes que j'ai achetées,
Look at the stuff which I have bought.

RULE III. When the past participle is joined with the verb *être*, either in the passive voice or in the compound tenses of a neuter verb, it always agrees with the nominative of the verb. With reflective and reciprocal verbs, the past participle agrees with the objective pronoun, when it is direct to the verb, but it remains invariable when the objective direct follows the participle. It is then used in precisely the same way as with the verb *avoir*. When connected with the pronominal verbs, it also agrees with the preceding pronouns, as these pronouns have always the sense of an objective direct; but it is invariable with

the following verbs with which this pronoun is, of course, an objective indirect. *Se plaire*, *se complaire*, to take pleasure; *se déplaire*, to displease each other; *se parler*, to speak to each other; *se succéder*, to succeed to each other; *se nuire*, to injure one another.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Ex. Elle est charmée de vous voir, | <i>She is overjoyed to see you.</i> |
| Ils sont venus ce matin, | <i>They came this morning.</i> |
| Elle s'est repentie, | <i>She has repented.</i> |
| Nous nous sommes habillés, | <i>We have dressed ourselves.</i> |
| Ils se sont battus, | <i>They have fought.</i> |
| Elle s'est lavé les mains, | <i>She has washed her hands.</i> |
| Nous nous sommes écrit des lettres, | <i>We have written letters to each other.</i> |
| Nous nous sommes parlé, | <i>We have spoken to each other.</i> |

These are the fundamental rules on the agreement of the participle past, which seem so difficult to foreigners. It is true that they are not always applied as easily as in the above examples, but all difficulties on this subject will be explained after the following exercise.

EXERCISE.

The verses that you have composed for me are replete with grace and elegance, but I do not deserve the compliments which you paid (1) me. I can give you a furnished (2) room, unless you would like better to furnish it for yourself. They are ruined (3) men, if their passion for gambling induces them to such an action. The news received by the last packet boat is very alarming, and my mother is persuaded that if I do not go to Europe immediately, I shall lose the property that my uncle left me by his will. Have you not admired, as well as I, the beautiful pictures that your master has showed to us? These young ladies, instead of writing the verbs that I had given them yesterday, went to the battery this morning, but they will be punished. I know that they have repented, but repentance does not repair the faults that a person has committed, it only renders them less odious. My children went to church this afternoon, and were seated in your pew. They placed themselves there because the door was open and they were persuaded that you would not blame them. Those two ladies met each other in the street, this morning. They conversed for several hours,

(1) faire. (2) meublé. (3) perdu.

and paid each other so many compliments that I laughed after having left them; we pleased each other as soon as we were introduced to one another. The different events which succeeded one another, have changed the face of affairs.

EXCEPTION. The past participle of a verb, either impersonal, or used impersonally, cannot in any manner agree with any substantive, as these verbs express only an action, and have no objective.

Ex. La pluie qu'il a FAIT, *The rain that fell.*
 Il s'est rassemblé une foule *There is collected a crowd of*
 de gens armés, *armed men.*

CASES IN WHICH THE AGREEMENT OF THE PAST PARTICIPLE MIGHT PRESENT SOME DIFFICULTY.

When the past participle, preceded by an objective direct, is immediately followed by a verb in the infinitive mood, the learner must be aware that this objective direct may be either that of the participle or of the following verb.

In the former instance, there is no doubt but the participle must agree with the substantive, which is its objective direct, but in the latter, the participle, having no objective, remains invariable. This must not be considered as a new difficulty, as it is a mere illustration of the general rule.

Conformably to this I will say,

La demoiselle que j'ai ENTENDUE chanter,
The young lady whom I heard sing.
 La chanson que j'ai ENTENDU chanter,
The song that I heard sung.

In order to explain these sentences better, it will be observed that when the substantive is the objective of the participle, it is also the nominative of the following infinitive. Thus, in the first of these two examples, *I have heard a young lady who was singing*, the relative *que* is the objective of the participle past and the nominative of the verb to sing, but in the second, *I have heard some person singing the song*, but not *the song that was singing*.

Then the relative *que*, being the objective of the infinitive sing, the participle must remain invariable.

In some circumstances the participle may determine the sense of the sentence.

For instance, if the following sentence was to be translated in English,

Je les ai vu applaudir,

The scholar might know by the agreement of the participle with *les*, that this pronoun is the objective of the participle *vu*, and thus the nominative of the infinitive *applaudir*. Therefore, he will translate this sentence by *I saw them applauding*.

If the sentence had been, *Je les ai vu applaudir*, as *vu* does not agree with *les*, this pronoun would be the objective of the following infinitive, and this phrase would mean, *I saw some person applauding them. I saw them applauded*.

N. B. The past participles *laissé* and *fait*, will be spoken of in the third part of this work, as the English expression that answers to them, requires some examination.

REMARK. Sometimes the infinitive, which comes after a participle, is understood, but the participle is still invariable, as the preceding substantive cannot be considered as its objective.

Ex. *Je lui ai rendu tous les services que j'ai pu,*
I rendered him all the services I could.

When the participle is followed by a verb connected with it by the conjunction *que*, this participle is invariable, as the preceding objective is that of the following verb and not of the participle.

Ex. *La lettre que j'ai PRESUMÉ que vous aviez reçue,*
The letter which I presumed that you had received.

EXERCISE.

Those grapes that I saw you buying at market this morning, I saw fall from the vine. The birds which I understand that you have eaten, I saw stolen from a countryman, yesterday. I saw them fly from their cage, and I saw them killed by the man who sold them to you. I heard you cry this morning, Miss, what was the cause of it? Did you not hear me scolded?

REMARK. It will be recollected that, according to the rule, page 149, on the French pronoun *le*, this pronoun answers for *so* or *that*. Then when the pronoun *le* or *l'* used in a French sentence has this signification, the past participle agreeing with that pronoun, remains invariable.

Ex. *Elle n'est pas aussi belle que je l' avais imaginé,*
She is not so handsome as I had imagined.

REMARK. If the past participle have for its direct objective, the pronoun *en*, as explained, page 147, this participle will remain invariable, as the word *en* has by itself neither gender nor number.

Ex. Vous m'avez offert des fleurs ; j'en ai pris.

You offered me flowers ; I took some.

But if *en* be indirect objective, the participle has nothing to do with it, because the past participle always agrees with the direct objective.

Ex. Votre frère m'a écrit ; lisez les lettres que j'en ai reçues,
Your brother has written to me ; read the letters which I have received from him.

REMARK. Should the substantive, which is the objective to the participle, be preceded by the interrogative adverbs or pronouns, *Combien de*, *que de*, *quel*, *quelle*, &c. the participle would still agree with the substantive, and not with these words.

Ex. Combien de volumes avez-vous lus ?

How many volumes have you read ?

Do not take a *que*, used by ellipsis, and referring to a preposition understood, for the objective direct of the participle.

Ex. Les jours qui il a vécu,

The days during which he has lived.

Que is here used instead of *pendant lesquels*, and besides, *vecu* being the participle of a neuter verb, cannot have any direct objective.

N. B. Some remarks will be made on the past participle, when coming after *le peu de*, when these words are further explained.

EXERCISE.

She is not as good as I had thought. We are as honest as you have said. You have said that I have no books, but I bought many this morning. That man had many friends, but he has lost several, because he did not know how to appreciate the services that he had received from them. How many men have you engaged ? How many exercises have you written ? What lesson has she recited ? what verbs have you learned ?

CHAPTER VII.

OF THE PREPOSITION.

A LIST OF THE FRENCH PREPOSITIONS.

Those used to denote place.

CHEZ has no corresponding word in English; it means *at the house of*, or what is expressed by *at*, with the possessive case, *chez le président, at the house of the president, at the president's*. As we have no French word to express *home, at home*, we use *chez moi, chez lui, chez vous*, at my house, at his house, at your house, &c.

Chez sometimes relates to the character of a person, and means *in*.

Cette vertu est chez vous un vice.

This virtue is a vice in you.

Chez means amongst.

Après avoir vécu quelque temps chez les mollachs,

After having lived for some time among the mollucks.

DANS, in.

DEVANT, before.

DERRIÈRE, behind.

PARTI, among.

SOUS, under.

SUR, on, over.

VERS, towards.

Prepositions of order.

AVANT, before.

APRÈS, after.

ENTRE, between.

DEPUIS, since, from.

DÈS, from.

Prepositions of Union.

AVEC, with.

DURANT, during.

PENDANT, during.

OUTRE, besides.

SUIVANT, according.

SELON, according.

Prepositions of Opposition.

CONTRE, against.

MALGRÉ, in spite of.

NONOBTANT, notwithstanding.

SANS, without.

EXCEPTÉ, except.

HORS, save, without.

HORMIS, except.

Prepositions which denote End.

ENVERS, towards, to.

TOUCHANT, respecting.

POUR, for.

PAR, by.

MOYENNANT, by means of.

ATTENDU, on account of.

Prepositions of Specification.

DE, of, from, with.

EN, in.

A, to, at.

REMARKS ON PREPOSITIONS.

DANS and EN, both answering to *in*, must not be confounded.

En, having a vague and undeterminate sense, is not followed by an article. If we except the cases in which this preposition is used before the names of *kingdoms, empires, &c.* and before the names of the months, it generally forms with the words to which it is joined, a kind of adjective or adverb. Ex. *Etre en bonne santé*, to be in good health; *vin en bouteilles*, bottled wine; *être en paix*, to be in peace; *en vain*, in vain; *en effet*, in fact; *en vérité*, indeed, &c.

Dans must be followed by the article, and is always used for determinate things. *Dans la Chambre*, in the room; *dans un tiroir*, in a drawer.

En cannot be used to express the place of a thing. This word is in some few instances followed by an article; but can then be easily replaced by *dans* or *d*; however, we say *En l'année mil huit cent, &c.* in the year, &c.

The English preposition *in* is also rendered by *d* or *de*, as will be seen in the exercise.

DEVANT and AVANT. *Devant* is a preposition which marks place, situation, &c.; and *avant*, marks order and time. *Un nuage a passé devant le soleil*, a cloud has passed before the sun; *C'était avant midi*, it was before twelve o'clock; *Elle viendra avant moi*, she will arrive before me. It is important not to use one of these prepositions instead of the other.

DERRIÈRE and APRÈS. The same observations which have been made with *devant* and *avant* will also apply to the preposition *Derrière la porte*, behind the door; *après-midi*, after-noon; *Après le Roi, venaient les princes*, after the king, came the princes.

PARTI ENTRE. *Parmi* is among a great number; *entre* is generally between two persons or things. *Parmi les hommes*, amongst men; *entre l'arbre et l'écorce*, between the tree and the bark.

SOUS and SUR, must not be confounded with *dessous* and

dessus, which are adverbs. Thus, the words *under* and *on*, and *over*, will be translated by *sous* and *sur*, when followed by a noun, and by *dessous* and *dessus*, when not.

VERS, ENVERS. *Vers* is used for physical objects, and *envers* for moral. Thus you must say, *Je vais vers la ville*, I go towards the city; and, *soyez charitables envers les pauvres*, be charitable towards the poor.

EXERCISE.

Shall we go to your house to-day, or will you come to ours? Where is your master? he is at his father's, or at the tailor's. In him it is goodness, but it is weakness in you. Theft was allowed amongst the Spartans. The armies were in view. The enemy were in a large field, and we were in a meadow. As it was in winter, the officers were in their tents, and we were in doubt whether we should commence fighting or not. You could not find in (1) the world a more covetous man. Did you ever see, in (2) your life, such a queer character? Virtue is exposed to many dangers in this world. Your answer was very good indeed. It was in December, in the year fifteen hundred and twenty-five. I cannot see the fire-works, because you are directly before me. I am before you because I came before you, and if you are behind me it is your fault. Why did you come after me? The prisoner was here before eleven o'clock, and the judges came after five o'clock. Your book is on the shelf. I thought that it was under; No, sir, it is on it. It is placed under your dictionary. We directed our march towards the light, and we soon perceived the family who were coming towards us. We are polite toward all strangers. Humanity towards the people, is the first obligation of the great. I was between your brother and his wife. I lived several years amongst the savages.

DEPUIS, DÈS ; *since, from.*

Depuis is used for time ; *dès*, for place.

Ex. *Depuis dix ans,* *Ten years since.*

Dès sa source, *From its so* *source.*

Before a verb, they must be followed by *que*, with the indicative ; *dès que* is very often used for *as soon as*.

(1) à.

(2) de.

AVEC, DE, *with*. *With* is expressed by *de*, after many verbs and adjectives, as has been seen before ; but it is always expressed by *avec*, when it means a connection between objects.

Ex. J'étais avec mon père, *I was with my father.*
Il est content de moi, *He is satisfied with me.*

DURANT, PENDANT, *during*. The use of *pendant* is more frequent than that of *durant*, as *durant* marks the whole duration of the time expressed by its objective, while *pendant* relates only to a part of that time.

Some of the above words may not only be used as prepositions, but also as adverbs or conjunctions, according to the construction of the phrase. The learner is requested not to confound these parts of speech. For this purpose, he may either consult a dictionary, or apply the explanations that have been given in the respective chapters.

The prepositions, *de* and *d*, will be examined at the end of this chapter.

Some prepositions are compounded of several words.

Some require the preposition *de* to come after them. They are principally those which are followed in English by *of*, *from*, or *with* and *besides*.

| | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|------------------|---------------|
| Autour de, | about, round. | au dessus de, | above, over, |
| auprès de, | { near, nigh, by, | | upon. |
| près de, | | au dessous de, | under, below, |
| proche de, | | | underneath. |
| à côté de, | aside, by. | au devant de* | before. |
| à fleur de, | close to, even | au derrière de,† | behind. |
| | with. | au dedans de, | within. |
| à l'égard de, | with regard to, | à l'insu de, | unknown to. |
| | concerning. | au travers de, | through. |
| à moins de, | under, far | aux environs de, | round about, |
| | less than. | en dépit de, | in spite of. |
| au dehors de, | out, without. | le long de, | along. |
| à l'épreuve de, | proof against. | vis-à-vis, | opposite to, |
| | | | over against. |

The following prepositions require *d* to come after them.

* Aller au devant, d'un prince, *to go to meet a prince.*

† Au derrière de l'armée, *behind the army.*

Conformément à, *according, pursuant.*

jusqu' à, } *till, until, even to, as far as.*

quant à, *as for, as to.*

All the other prepositions are directly followed by the noun, without *de* and *à*.

EXERCISE.

We shall walk round the meadow. I wrote my letter on the table which is close by you. Sit down by me. Cut that sorrel even with the ground. I bought it at the rate of five shillings a pound. With regard to what you say, he disbelieves it. She lives opposite to N's garden. They planted a large tree before the house. I can do nothing for want of money. A candid and sincere man always speaks and acts according to what he thinks. I waited for you till five o'clock. You praised him even to the skies. I went as far as Quebec; and I travelled along the river. You did it without the knowledge of your parents.

OF THE ARTICLE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

There are many instances of substantives used after prepositions, without an article, which makes an exception to the general rule, on the articles.

It must be observed that the article is never suppressed before substantives in a general sense, or when the definite article is expressed in English.

It is then only the partitive or the indefinite article which can be suppressed in some instances; but never the definite article either expressed or understood.

This partitive article is generally dropped in proverbial sentences, and particularly when the preposition and article form a kind of adverb, as was said, page 119, on the articles, and page 205 on the preposition *EN*. This rule is best understood by practice.

Ex. Contre vent et marée,
Sur mer et sur terre,
Par bonté par faiblesse,

Against wind and tide.
Over sea and land.
Through goodness, through weakness.

Par force,
Avant diner,
Avec politesse,
Sans regret,

By force.
Before dinner.
With civility, politely.
Without regret.

Sans always excludes the article before a substantive used in a partitive sense, but requires the definite *le, la, les*, before nouns in a general sense, or when *the* is used in English.

| | | |
|---------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Ex. Sans argent, | <i>Without money.</i> | (without any money.) |
| Sans enfants, | <i>Without children.</i> | (without any children.) |
| Sans la vertu, | <i>Without virtue.</i> | (in general.) |
| Sans la foi, | <i>Without faith.</i> | (in general.) |
| Sans les officiers, | <i>Without the officers.</i> | |

Avec rejects the partitive article only when it is prefixed to substantives expressing moral qualities, as it can then be considered as an adverb ; but it is always required before nouns of sensible objects.

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| Ex. Avec honneur, | <i>With honor.</i> |
| Avec de l'argent, | <i>With money.</i> |

EXERCISE.

I am without a servant, and I refused to take one who came without recommendations. How could we live without hope, that precious blessing. He is a prisoner and lives without hope. He always acts with prudence. I always see him with children and never with men. She answered with passion and spoke with impudence.

OBSERVATIONS ON SOME ENGLISH PRÉPOSITIONS.

Above is rendered by *plus de*, when preceding a noun expressing time, so as to signify *more than*, or *longer than*.

| | |
|--|--|
| Ex. Le combat dura plus de deux heures, | |
| <i>The fight lasted above two hours.</i> | |

At is expressed by *de*, after nouns or verbs, denoting anger, derision, joy, surprise, &c.

| | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| Ex. Il se moque de vous, | <i>He laughs at you.</i> |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|

By, preceding a noun of weight or measure, day, week, month or year, is translated by *à*.

| | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| Ex. J'achette à la livre, | <i>I buy by the pound.</i> |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|

In, after words denoting pain, hurting, or wounding, and preceding one of the possessive adjectives in conjunction with any part of the body, is translated by *à*, and the possessive adjective is left out.

Il fut blessé au bras, *He was wounded in his arm.*

In, when it precedes a noun denoting a part of the time, is not expressed in French.

J'étais là le soir, *I was there in the evening.*

On, or *upon*, after verbs meaning *to live*, *to depend*, *to subsist*, is rendered by *de*.

It is not expressed before the names of the month and week, as was said before.

Nous vivons de racines, *We live upon roots.*

Over, expressing the end of an action, is rendered by the verbs *finir*, *passer*, *achever*.

Quand la pluie fut passée, *When the rain was over.*

EXERCISE.

We waited for him above two months, and when we saw that winter was approaching, we departed; we were above twenty persons in the boat, and we had a long passage. We lived for one week on bread and cheese. The captain laughed at us; we were surprised at such conduct, and we thought that it was very unpleasant to depend on such a person. He purchased his coffee by the barrel, and now he sells it by the pound. When the bad weather was over, he played on his flute and amused us during the whole evening. I have a pain in my shoulder, and I cannot put *on* my coat.

ON THE PREPOSITIONS *de*, *d*, AND *pour*.

The use of these prepositions before an infinitive is always a subject of difficulty for foreigners.

It must be observed that the preposition which precedes an infinitive in French, is always governed by the preceding word, whether an adjective or a verb, the preposition *to* which necessarily precedes the English infinitive is comprehended in the single word, which is used to express the French infinitive.

This being understood, we shall have to determine the circumstances in which the French infinitive is to be preceded by one of these prepositions.

We shall not here speak of the instances in which one of these prepositions forms together with the preceding and following words, a kind of gallicism, as the third part of this work is specially devoted to that explanation.

When the English participle present is to be rendered in French by the infinitive, this infinitive must be preceded by *de*, if the participle present be governed by *of*, *from*, or *with*; and by *pour*, if *for* be prefixed to the English present participle.

If the verb be in the infinitive in English, the following rules must be applied.

If this verb denote the end of a preceding action, so that it might be preceded by the words *in order to*, *with a view to*, it is then preceded by the preposition *pour*.

Ex. Il a fait cela pour me tromper,
He did that to cheat me. (in order to.)

The infinitive is also preceded by *pour* when it follows an adjective, modified by an adverb of quantity.

Ex. Etes-vous assez simple pour faire cela?
Are you simple enough to do that?

When the infinitive is preceded by an adjective, the learner should ascertain whether the adjective requires to be followed by *d* or *de*. For this purpose, he must either try the same adjective before a noun, or refer to the lists, pages 127 and 128.

Ex. Je suis charmé de vous voir, *I am glad to see you.*

I use *de*, because glad, before a noun or pronoun, is followed by *of*, as, *I am glad of that.*

One verb can be used as the objective of another. Sometimes this objective verb is preceded by no preposition, viz. after the verbs,

| | | | |
|--------------|--------------------|------------|---------------------|
| Aimer mieux, | <i>to prefer.</i> | laisser, | <i>to allow, to</i> |
| aller, | <i>to go.</i> | | <i>suffer.</i> |
| compter, | <i>to think.</i> | oser, | <i>to dare.</i> |
| croire, | <i>to believe.</i> | pouvoir, | <i>to be able.</i> |
| daigner, | <i>to deign.</i> | prétendre, | <i>to pretend.</i> |
| déclarer, | <i>to declare.</i> | paraître, | <i>to appear.</i> |
| désirer, | <i>to wish.</i> | préférer, | <i>to prefer.</i> |
| entendre, | <i>to hear.</i> | savoir, | <i>to know.</i> |
| envoyer, | <i>to send.</i> | sembler, | <i>to seem.</i> |
| espérer, | <i>to hope.</i> | venir, | <i>to come.</i> |
| faire, | <i>to make.</i> | voir, | <i>to see.</i> |
| | | vouloir, | <i>to want.</i> |

Ex. Je vais voir votre oncle, *I am going to see your uncle.*

REMARK. The conjunction *and*, is not expressed in French after verbs of motion.

Ex. Allez lui parler, *Go and speak to him.*

OBSERVATION. The verb which comes after another, being considered as its objective, the preposition *de* will be prefixed to it, if this second verb be objective direct, and *à* if it be objective indirect.

Ex. Je vous permets d'aller, *I permit you to go ;*

Because the thing permitted is *to go*, which then may be considered an objective direct.

Je vous invite à sortir, *I invite you to go out.*

Because here you is the objective direct, as being the person invited.

It is the same after reflexive verbs.

Je me propose de vous voir, *I propose to see you.*

Je me sou mets à vous obéir, *I submit myself to obey you.*

However, this rule is not without exception. We say,

| | | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| montrer à, | <i>to show</i> | apprendre à, | <i>to learn.</i> |
| s'abstenir de, | <i>to abstain.</i> | entreprendre à, | <i>to undertake.</i> |
| accuser de, | <i>to accuse.</i> | se défier de, | <i>to mistrust.</i> |
| avertir de, | <i>to warn.</i> | se désespérer de, | <i>to despair.</i> |
| aviser de, | <i>to advise.</i> | se hasarder de, | <i>to venture.</i> |
| blâmer de, | <i>to blame.</i> | se hâter de, | <i>to haste.</i> |
| conjurcr de, | <i>to entreat.</i> | prier de, | <i>to pray.</i> |
| se défendre de, | <i>to justify.</i> | sommer de, | <i>to summon.</i> |
| défier de, | <i>to challenge.</i> | soupçonner de, | <i>to suspect.</i> |

The verb must be preceded by the preposition *d*, when, coming after a substantive, it can be expressed in the passive.

Ex. Maison à vendre, *House for sale.*

Figure à peindre, *Face to paint.*

Besides these, some neuter verbs govern one of these prepositions, whether prefixed to a noun or a verb.

Those which require the preposition *à* to precede their objective, and which differ from the English, are,

Before a Verb,

| | | | |
|-------------|-----------------|-----------|------------------|
| Aimer à, | <i>to like.</i> | rêver à, | <i>to dream.</i> |
| chercher à, | <i>to try.</i> | servir à, | <i>to serve.</i> |

| | | | |
|-------------|--------------------|---------------|------------------|
| hésiter à, | <i>to hesitate</i> | songer à, | <i>to think.</i> |
| parvenir à, | <i>to attain.</i> | tendre à, | <i>to aim.</i> |
| penser à, | <i>to think.</i> | travailler à, | <i>to work.</i> |

Before a Substantive.

| | | | |
|-------------|----------------------|---------------|----------------------|
| déplaire à, | <i>to displease.</i> | obvier à, | <i>to obviate;</i> |
| désobéir à, | <i>to disobey.</i> | plaire à, | <i>to please.</i> |
| fournir à, | <i>to furnish.</i> | ressembler à, | <i>to look like.</i> |
| nuire à, | <i>to prejudice.</i> | succéder à, | <i>to succeed.</i> |
| obéir à, | <i>to obey.</i> | survivre, à, | <i>to survive.</i> |

Those which govern the preposition *de*, and which differ from the English, are,

| | | | |
|-------------|-----------------------------------|--------------|--------------------|
| jouir de, | <i>to enjoy.</i> | médire de, | <i>to slander.</i> |
| manquer de, | <i>to want, to be in need of.</i> | profiter de, | <i>to profit.</i> |

Some govern *à* or *de*.

| | | | |
|--------------|----------------------|----------|-------------------|
| commencer, | <i>to begin.</i> | engager, | <i>to engage.</i> |
| contraindre, | <i>to constrain.</i> | forcer, | <i>to force.</i> |

EXERCISE.

I prevented him from doing that, because he would have been accused of having laughed at those persons. I will do that to prove to you that I am still your friend. That man is too rich to be ruined by that loss, but he is too old to carry on his business. Are you capable of doing such a base action? He is more proper to fight than to be a lawyer. He designed to follow me, and he came to console me. I saw you do that. Go and oblige him to follow you, if it is possible. I ordered him to prepare every thing for me. If you should offer to go instead of him, he would give you all he possesses. You cannot force him to pay you, because he has no money. I did not authorise you to speak so.

OF THE PREPOSITION *de*, WHEN REQUIRED IN FRENCH, ALTHOUGH NOT USED IN ENGLISH.

It may be recollected that the pronoun *en* is used with the verb, when a cardinal number, or adverb of quantity, &c. expressed in a sentence as objective, is not followed by a substantive, (see pages 147, 148.) It must be said now that when these numbers or words of quantity are followed by an adjective or participle relating to the noun understood, they must be connected to that adjective or participle by the preposition *de*.

Ex. Nous en avons quatre de finis,
We have four finished.

REMARK. The preposition *à*, *de*, and *en*, when prefixed to nouns, must be repeated before every one.

Ex. J'irai à Paris, à Londres, en France, et en Italie,
I will go to Paris, London, France, and Italy.

EXERCISE.

We had a thousand men killed and three hundred wounded. That man always relates something funny and interesting. She has six daughters, two very handsome, and four very intelligent. We came from China and Japan, from Canton and Peking. I have lived in Germany, Ireland, Russia and Italy. Do you find any one obliging in this house?

CHAPTER VIII.

OF THE ADVERBS.

A definition of this part of speech has been given, page 21.

There are adverbs of several sorts; but those only will be spoken of, which require some explanation.

Those of quantity have been explained, page 92, but it will be observed here, that adverbs of quantity used in comparison, are followed by *de*, when prefixed to a number.

Ex. J'en ai plus de trente, *I have more than thirty.*

Of the adverbs *en*, *hence*, *thence*, and *y*, *there*, *thither*.

These adverbs are used in exactly the same manner as the pronouns, *en* and *y*. They can be employed, only when the name of the place has been before expressed.

After an imperative ending in a vowel, they oblige that imperative to take *s* for the sake of euphony.

Ex. Vous allez à Londres, J'en viens,
You go to London, I came from there.
 Vas-y. *Go (thou) there.*

Should the pronoun *en*, and the adverb *y*, come together in the same sentence, the latter should be placed first.

Ex. Je vous y en porterai, *I will carry you some thither.*

Adverbs expressing negation require the verb to be put in the negative.

Ex. Il ne ment jamais. *He never lies.*

REMARK. You must not confound the adverbs *aussi*, *autant de*, only used in comparisons, with *si* and *tant de*, used in exclamatory sentences; but say,

Je suis aussi, sage et j'ai autant d'amis que vous,
I am as good, and I have as many friends as you.
 and Il est si sage ! il a tant d'amis !

He is so good ! he has so many friends !

REMARK. *How*, followed by an adjective in an interrogative sentence, cannot be expressed in French, as will be seen in the third part; but in an exclamatory sentence, it is rendered by *comme* or *que*, and immediately followed by the verb, after which comes the adjective:

Ex. Comme vous êtes bon ! *How good you are !*
 Qu'elle est jolie ! *How pretty she is !*

REMARK. The article *the*, prefixed to the adverb *more* or *less*, is not expressed in French in sentences of this kind:

Ex. Plus je vous vois, plus je vous aime.
The more I see you, the more I love you.

Should that adverb be followed in English by an adjective, or should the article *the* be followed by an adjective in the comparative, that adjective ought to be placed after the verb.

Ex. Puis il est riche plus il est avare,
The richer he is, the more covetous he is.

REMARK. The same article *the*, prefixed to the adverb *most*, in a superlative relative, or followed by an adjective in the superlative relative, must be translated in French; but it must be observed whether it refers to a substantive, either expressed or understood, or to the French adverb *plus*, which is always used in those phrases.

This article relates to *plus*, when this superlative expresses the result of a comparison of the thing qualified, with itself. In such a case, *the* is invariably translated by *le*, whatever be the gender and number of the adjective.

Ex. Les sages ne se désespèrent jamais même quand ils sont le plus malheureux,
The wise never despair, even when they are the most unfortunate.

When the superlative expresses the result of the comparison of the object qualified, with others of the same kind, the article agrees in gender and number with this substantive, as it then falls into the rule of the superlative relative.

Ex. De toutes les planètes, la lune est la plus brillante pour nous,

Of all the planets, the moon is the most brilliant to us.

REMARK. When a past participle relates to a substantive preceded by *le peu de*, answering to the English expression of quantity, *the little*, this participle remains invariable if *le peu de* marks a complete exclusion. But it agrees if *le peu de* marks some quantity.

Le peu d'affection que vous lui avez témoignée a suffi,

Le peu d'affection que vous lui avez témoigné l'a guéri.

OF THE NEGATIVES *ne*, *pas* AND *point*.

The negative *PAS* OR *POINT* must accompany *NE* in all circumstances, except when there is in the sentence a negative pronoun or adverb, as was shown before in the rules on the pronouns.

However, after the verbs *cesser*, *oser*, *savoir*, and *pouvoir*, the *pas* or *point* may be omitted for the sake of elegance.

Ex. Je n'ose vous en parler. *I dare not speak to you about it.*

And also in expressions of this kind :

Connaissez-vous un homme dont elle ne médise ?

Do you know a man that she does not slander ?

The difference between *pas* and *point* is this ; *Point* is a stronger negative than *pas*, but the former is in many circumstances used in an elegant style to prevent the too frequent repetition of the word *pas*.

In many instances, *ne* must be used before a verb, although the sentence be affirmative.

That *ne* is always used with verbs preceded by *craindre* and the like. However, it will be observed here that when *craindre* is negative, the *ne* is not used.

Ex. Je ne crains pas qu'il vienne,

I do not fear that he shall come.

Ne is used with a verb preceded by *empêcher*, to prevent

and the like, *prendre garde*, to take care, and *se défier*, to suspect, in all their various forms.

It is also used with verbs preceded by *nier*, to deny; *désespérer*, to despair; *disconvenir*, to disagree; *douter*, to doubt; but only when these verbs are negative or interrogative.

Ex. Je doute qu'il vienne, *I doubt whether he will come.*

Doutez-vous qu'il ne le fasse?

Do you doubt that he will do it?

After the conjunctions *à moins que*, unless, *de peur que*, for fear, the negative *ne* must always accompany the verb.

Ex. à moins que vous ne le fassiez,

Unless you should do it.

After *avant que*, before, when the future action is doubtful.

Ex. Dites-lui de venir avant que je ne sorte,

Tell him to come before I go out.

Ne is used with the verb which is the second member of a comparison, that presents an idea of inequality.

Ex. Il est moins beau qu'il n'était,

He is less handsome than he was.

But it is not used if the comparative presents equality.

Elle est aussi belle,

Elle n'est pas moins aimable.

} qu'elle était.

And also when the comparative adverb is an adverb of equality.

Elle n'est pas aussi belle qu'elle l'était.

EXERCISE.

Can you tell me how many books I lent you? You sent me more than twelve, and I have read more than half of them. My father has more than six hundred pamphlets in his library. Did you go to see that man? No; I am going there now, and when I come thence, I will give you an answer. She is going to Washington; I am going there also. Can you not give me some money? I will send you some there. That man never laughs. I do not know what I am writing. If you do not stop your prosecutions, you will be blamed. I fear you will betray me; but I do not fear that my master will punish me for that. I believe that your plan is very good, and unless they are unreasonable, it will be adopted. I doubt whether this

general will be able to command, and yet I do not doubt but he will be appointed. You are not more studious than you have been. That merchant is still as lucky as he was formerly; and he does not owe as much as he has paid.

CHAPTER IX.

OF THE CONJUNCTIONS.

The conjunction *que* is always placed between two ideas, both necessary to complete the sense; and cannot be spared in French, as it is in English.

Ex. Je crois qu'il est honnête homme,
I believe he is or that he is an honest man.

That conjunction is very often used by elipsis, instead of other conjunctions ending in *que*, and sometimes instead of any other conjunctions or adverbs.

Ex. Si l'on aimait son pays, et qu'on en désirât sincèrement la gloire, &c.

If we loved our country, and sincerely wished its glory, &c.

Some conjunctions constructed with *que*, govern the indicative mood, others govern the subjunctive; the latter are those given in the list, page 195.

Ni...ni, which answers to *neither...nor*, reject the article when they are prefixed to substantives in a partitive sense, but require the definite article before nouns used in a general sense.

Ex. Ni or ni argent, *Neither gold nor silver.*
Je n'aime ni le vin ni la liqueur, *I like neither wine nor liquor.*

EXERCISE.

Do you think he will do it? I hope I shall not have to complain about it, to-morrow. We have neither parents nor friends in this country. They have neither morals nor religion. I esteem neither riches nor pride. Do you think I can talk French?

PART III.

The object of this part will be to explain the use of the gallicisms, and also to show the scholar how to translate in French the anglicisms which have not been mentioned in the course of the work.

It is principally on the rules that will be henceforward given that the learner must try to write compositions; on that account, the exercise should be entirely omitted.

OF THE VERBS *avoir* AND *être*.

The construction of the French sentence requires, in some instances, that the verb *to be* should be translated by *avoir*, as will be seen in the following list.

AVOIR.

faim,
soif,
froid,
chaud,
sommil,
peur,
honte,
raison,
tort,
deux, trois, dix, vingt ans,

TO BE.

hungry,
thirsty,
cold,
warm,
sleepy,
afraid,
ashamed,
right,
wrong,
2, 3, 10, 20 years old.

The above verbs only relate to persons.

DIFFERENT EXPRESSIONS CONSTRUCTED WITH AVOIR.

Avoir mal à, followed by the noun, expresses all kinds of pain, sores, aches, &c.

Ex. J'ai mal à la tête, au nez, au pied, &c.

I have a head-ache, a sore nose, a pain in my foot, &c.

When the disease is characteristic, we may use *de* without an article, instead of *à*.

J'ai mal de dent, *I have a tooth-ache.*

(I have that disease called a tooth-ache.)

J'ai mal à une dent, would mean that one of my teeth hurts me.

Avoir froid, or chaud à, followed by the noun, is used to express any part of the body which is cold or warm.

J'ai froid aux pieds, My feet are cold.

A composition may be written both on the preceding and following expressions.

| | | |
|-------|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| avoir | besoin de, | to want, to be in need of. |
| | coutume de, | to be accustomed to. |
| | dessein de, | to design. |
| | pitié de, | to pity. |
| | envie de, | to have a mind to. |
| | soin de, | to take care of. |
| | horreur de, | to have horror of. |
| | l'air (an adjective.) | to look, (an adjective.) |
| | lieu, | to take place. |
| | n'avoir garde de, | to be far from. |
| | n'avoir que faire de, | to have no need of. |
| | avoir beau. | |

This expression is one of our most singular idiotisms ; it can only be made intelligible by examples.

Vous avez beau crier vous ne m'attendrirez pas,

It is in vain or useless for you to cry, you will not soften me.

J'ai beau étudier je ne peux jamais rien apprendre,

Although I study, or in spite of all my exertions, I never can learn any thing.

| | |
|----------------|-------------------|
| Avoir à, | To have to. |
| J'ai à sortir, | I have to go out. |
| Y avoir, | There to be. |

The English impersonal verb *there to be*, is translated in French by the verb *y avoir*, conjugated in the following manner.

| | |
|------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Il y a, | there is, there are. |
| Il y avait, | there was, there were. |
| Il y eut, | there was, there were. |
| Il y aura, | there will or shall be. |
| Il y aurait, | there would, could, or should be. |
| Il y a eu, &c. | there has or have been, &c. |
| qu'il y ait, | that there may be. |
| qu'il y eût, &c. | that there might be, &c. |

The same verb interrogative and negative.

| | |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| Il n'y a pas, | There is or are not. |
| Y a-t-il ? | Is or are there ? |
| N'y a-t-il pas ? | Is or are there not ? |

In a refined style, the verb *être*, used impersonally, is employed instead of *y avoir*.

Il est des philosophes qui préfèrent la pauvreté aux richesses,
There are philosophers who prefer poverty to wealth.

A composition must be written on this verb.

ON VOICI AND VOILÀ.

The expression *there is*, or *are*, *here is*, or *are*, used in pointing out objects, are translated in French by the two prepositions, *voilà* and *voici*.

Ex. Voici un homme, *Here is a man.*
 Voilà deux dames, *There are two ladies.*

These two prepositions being the contractions of the words *vois ici*, or *vois là*, receive the pronouns like verbs. The only difference is, that the personal pronouns are always used before them, and never after.

Voici and *voilà* must be preceded by *en* when followed by a number or any word of quantity, which is not accompanied by a substantive.

Ex. Me voici, *Here I am.*
 La voilà, *There she is.*
 En voilà un, *There is one.*
 En voici plusieurs, *Here are several.*

Write a composition on this subject.

THE VERB Y AVOIR IN ITS DIFFERENT ATTRIBUTIONS.

This verb is used when speaking of time; whatever be the English expression to be translated.

As in phrases of this kind the interest of the action is carried to the present time, the compound tenses are generally used after the verb *il y a*.

By its aid we translate the English word *ago*.

Il y a dix ans qu'il est mort,
He died ten years ago.

REMARK. We might also use the preposition *depuis*, since, and say,

J'ai fait cela depuis deux heures, or Il y a deux heures que j'ai fait cela,

I finished that two hours since, or two hours ago.

RULE. When the action is still continuing, the verb following *il y a* must be put in the *present of the indicative*.

*Il y a dix ans que je demeure ici,
I have been living here these ten years.*

When we express a length of time, during which an action has not taken place, we may use either of these two expressions,

*Il y a trois mois que je ne l'ai vu,
Je ne l'ai pas vu depuis trois mois,
It is three months since I saw him,*

That is to say, I have not seen him these three months.

How long is expressed by *combien*, followed by *de tems*, how much time. These two last words may be placed after *il y a*.

Combien de tems y-a-t-il, or Combien y-a-t-il de tems que vous êtes à New-York?

How long have you been in New-York?

We may also express the sentence by *combien* alone.

Combien y-a-t-il que votre frère est marié ?

How long has your brother been married ?

We render, *how long ago*, by *combien y-a-t-il de tems ?*

Not long ago, by *Il n'y a pas long-tems, or depuis peu de tems ; depuis peu.*

A long time since, by *depuis long tems.*

REMARK. When we use *il y a*, we must not have *depuis* in the same sentence, but merely the conjunction *que*.

Ex. *Il y a deux heures que nous marchons, and not depuis que,*

We have been walking these two hours.

OTHER EXAMPLES ON THE SAME VERB.

Il y avait une heure que nous nous étions quittés,

We had been parted one hour ago.

Il y aura demain dix ans que je suis arrivé ici,

It will be ten years to-morrow since I arrived here.

Il y a dix jours aujourd'hui. Je ne pense pas qu'il y ait d'avantage,

It is ten years ago to-day. I do not think that it is longer.

Il y avait plus d'une heure que vous l'aviez, or,

Vous l'aviez depuis plus d'une heure,

You had had it more than one hour.

Il y a is also used to mark distance.

Il y a 244 milles de New-York à Boston,
It is 244 miles from New-York to Boston.

How far? is expressed by *combien de distance?* or simply *combien?*

Combien y a-t-il de distance de Salem à la Providence?

How far is it from Salem to Providence?

We might also say,

Quelle distance y a-t-il de New-York, &c.

How far? is also rendered by *jusques où?* or *où jusque*, which literally means *to where?*

Où jusques sont-ils allés? *How far did they go?*

DIFFERENT EXPRESSIONS CONSTRUCTED WITH ETRE.

Etre à même de, *to be able to.*

Je suis à même d'acheter cette maison,

I am able to purchase that house.

Etre d'avis que, *to think that.*

Y être, *to be in.*

Monsieur N. y est-il?

Is M. N. in?

Il n'y est pas,

He is not in.

Y être means also to hit a thing, to find out one's track.

J'y suis,

I hit it right.

Vous n'y êtes plus?

You lost the thread.

En être means to be one of the number, to be one of the match.

J'en suis,

I am one of the match, of the party.

Ces livres n'en sont

These books are not in the set.

pas,

En être is also used in narration, reading, or writing, instead of *to leave off*.

Où en étions-nous?

Where did we leave off?

Vous en étiez lorsque, &c. *You left off when, &c.*

Etre à, followed by an infinitive, is often used to translate the English verb *to be*, followed by a present participle.

Je suis à diner.

I am dining, about dining.

Vous étiez à jaser,

You were prating.

The sentence translated thus acquires more force than by the imperfect.

OF THE VERB ÊTRE, USED IMPERSONALLY.

The verb *être* is sometimes preceded by the impersonal pronoun *il*, and sometimes by the demonstrative *ce*. Though the learner may refer to pages 106 and 150, yet it will be remarked here that when the verb *to be* is, in English, preceded by a personal pronoun, and followed by a substantive, that personal pronoun is translated in French by the demonstrative *ce*, when we point out the person or thing spoken of.

C'est ma mère. *She is my mother,*
literally meaning, *It is my mother.*

The demonstrative pronoun *ce* is most generally used in these sentences, as it more particularly fixes the attention on what follows.

REMARK. Although the pronoun *ce* precedes the verb, it is with the substantive following, and not with this pronoun that the verb agrees in number.

Ce sont mes amis. *They are my friends.*

REMARK. The personal pronoun cannot be translated by *ce*, if the verb *to be* is followed by an adjective without a substantive.

There is no difficulty of course, when the verb *to be*, followed by a substantive, is preceded by the pronoun *il*, as it is then always translated by *ce*.

C'était votre père. *It was your father.*

In this last instance the verb agrees in number only when followed by a substantive or a pronoun of the third person.

C'est moi, c'est toi, c'est lui, c'est nous, c'est vous, ce sont eux, ce sont vos sœurs.

It is I, it is thou, it is he, it is we, it is you, it is they, it is your sisters.

RULE. When the verb *to be* is followed by an adjective, the pronoun *il*, which precedes it, is translated by *ce*, when it can be supplied by *that*, or else is expressed by the impersonal pronoun *il*.

C'est excellent. *It is excellent.* (That is excellent.)

Il est important de faire cela. *It is important to do that.*

There you cannot understand, *that is important to do that.*

Remember that *ce* requires the preposition *à* to come

falloir, being an impersonal verb, cannot be constructed with any nominative except *il*. Thus,

Il faut que j'aille,

signifies, *I must go, it is necessary for me to go, at that, I should go; I have to go, I ought to go, &c.*

Il faut qu'il aille,

He must go, &c.

Il fallait que tu vinsses,

Thou hadst to come.

Il faudra que nous fassions,

We will be obliged to do.

Il faudrait que mon oncle

It would be proper that my

me présentât,

uncle should introduce me.

Sometimes when the agent of the action to be performed, is expressed by a personal pronoun, this pronoun is used, as an objective indirect to the verb *falloir*, and the second verb put in the infinitive.

Il me faut écrire aujourd'hui,

I must write to-day.

Il lui fallût obéir,

He was compelled to obey.

In this case the verb *falloir* may be followed by an objective direct, and then signifies that the objective indirect must have the thing introduced as the objective direct.

Il me faut un chapeau,

I must have a hat.

Il leur faudrait une servante,

They should have a servant.

In commanding, *falloir* may be followed by an infinitive without a pronoun, and then only applies to the person spoken to, or sometimes has a vague and indeterminate sense.

Il faut faire cela,

That must be done.

Il faut mourir,

We must die.

OF THE FRENCH VERB VOULOIR,

And the auxiliary verbs will and would.

The verb *vouloir*, answers in French for all English verbs expressing *will*.

Thus we ought to translate by the verb *vouloir*, the auxiliary verbs *will* and *would*, if instead of merely expressing a future action, they imply the will of the nominative of the sentence.

Je ne veux pas sortir,

I will not go out.

(I do not want to go out.)

Voulez-vous venir avec moi?

Will you come with me?

Because in this phrase I consult the intention of the person to whom I speak.

Je ne le veux pas, *I do not want that.*

When *would* expresses a past action, it must be translated by *vouloir* in any of the past tenses.

Il n'a pas voulu me parler, *He would not speak to me. (past.)*

But if the action is in the conditional, the verb *vouloir* must be used in the conditional.

Il ne voudrait pas venir, *He would not come. (conditional.)*

Vouloir being an active verb in French, does not require to be followed by the verb *to have* in all circumstances.

Voulez-vous du bœuf rôti? *Will you have some roast beef?*

See, besides, all that has been said on this verb, in the note, page 84th and page 194.

OF THE FRENCH VERB DEVOIR,

And the auxiliary verbs, shall, should, and ought to.

The verb *devoir* answers in French for all English verbs expressing duty or obligation.

It renders in French,

1st. The verb *to be* followed by *to* and a verb.

Quand devez-vous y aller? *When are you to go there?*

2d. The verb *to have to*.

Ils devaient vous porter une lettre, *They had to carry you a letter.*

3d. The verb *ought to*. It is then generally used in the conditional.

Vous devriez faire cela, *You ought to do that.*

4th. The verb *should*, when it conveys the idea of a duty, in which case, it is put in the conditional.

Ces enfans devraient aller à l'école,

These children should go to school.

Shall is never expressed by *devoir*, except in interrogative sentences.

Que dois-je faire?

What shall I do?

What am I to do?

Où devons-nous aller?

Where shall we go?

Where are we to go?

As *devoir* possesses all the moods and tenses, we put this verb in the mood and tense required by the sense of the sentence, and the action which is to be performed is put in the infinitive.

Vous auriez dû faire cela, You ought to have done that.

OF THE VERB *POUVOIR*,

And the auxiliary verbs can and could, may and might.

N. B. See the note on this verb, pages 83 and 84.

We translate in French by the same verb, *pouvoir*, the verbs, *can* and *may*, *could* and *might*.

Je peux faire cela, I may do that, I can do that.

When *could* and *might* express a past tense, the verb *pouvoir* is used in one of the past tenses; but when the action is in the conditional, this verb must be used in the conditional.

Je ne pus pas sortir hier, I could not go out yesterday.
Je pouvais sortir hier, I might go out yesterday.

In the negative way, we express the verb *pouvoir* in the sense of *can* or *could*, differently from what we do when it means *may* or *might*.

In the former instance *pouvoir* is put in the negative. In the latter case, the negative falls on the following verb.

Nous ne pouvons pas le faire, We cannot do it.
Nous pouvions ne pas le faire, We might not do it.

The remark in the construction of the verb *devoir*, may also be applied to *pouvoir*.

Je n'aurais pas pu venir, I could not have come.
Comment aurait-il pu vous refuser, How could he have refused you?

OF THE FRENCH VERB *LAISSER*,

And the English Auxiliary Verb let.

The auxiliary verb *let*, serves in English to form the first and third persons of the imperative. In this case, the French verb is put in the imperative, as was seen with the conjugations. But should this verb *let*, be in the imperative itself, and not an auxiliary to the following verb, then, in French, the verb *laisser* should be used, and the following verb put in the infinitive. The personal

pronoun is then the objective of the verb *laisser*, and used like pronouns after an imperative.

This is always the case in the first person singular of the imperative.

| | |
|----------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Laissez-moi faire,</i> | <i>Let me do.</i> |
| <i>Laissez-le passer,</i> | <i>Let him pass.</i> |
| <i>Laissez-nous jouer,</i> | <i>Let us play.</i> |

OF THE FRENCH VERB FAIRE,

And the auxiliary verb do and did.

The learner may refer to pages 51 and 52, and will there and in the following conjugation find a better explanation on the use of these Verbs than can be given here.

Verb FAIRE in its various attributions.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <i>Faire mal à,</i> | <i>to hurt.</i> |
| <i>J'ai fait mal à cet enfant,</i> | <i>I hurt that child.</i> |
| <i>Le soulier me fait mal,</i> | <i>my shoe hurts me.</i> |
| <i>Vous m'avez fait mal au bras,</i> | <i>you hurt my arm.</i> |
| | <i>(you hurt me in my arm.)</i> |
| <i>Faire attention à,</i> | <i>to pay attention to.</i> |
| <i>Faire raison de,</i> | <i>to do justice to.</i> |
| <i>Faire cas de,</i> | <i>to esteem.</i> |
| <i>Faire grâce à,</i> | <i>to pardon.</i> |
| <i>Faire peur à,</i> | <i>to frighten.</i> |
| <i>Faire honte à,</i> | <i>to shame.</i> |
| <i>Faire envie à,</i> | <i>to excite the envy of.</i> |
| <i>Faire pitié à,</i> | <i>to excite the pity of.</i> |
| <i>Faire des armes,</i> | <i>to fence.</i> |
| <i>Faire de la musique,</i> | <i>to play on any instrument.</i> |
| | <i>to sing with music, in a concert.</i> |
| <i>Faire ensorte que,</i> | <i>to do in such manner that, &c.</i> |
| <i>Faire de manière que,</i> | |
| <i>Faire que,</i> | |
| <i>Faire passer à,</i> | <i>to pass (act. trans.)</i> |
| <i>Faire voir à,</i> | <i>to show, to let see.</i> |
| <i>Faire savoir à,</i> | <i>to let know.</i> |
| <i>Faire semblant de,</i> | <i>to make as if.</i> |
| <i>Faire valoir,</i> | <i>to invest (money) to improve,</i> |
| | <i>(act. trans.)</i> |
| <i>Faire périr,</i> | <i>to put to death.</i> |
| <i>Faire cher vivre,</i> | <i>to be dear living.</i> |

Faire, prefixed to an infinitive, generally expresses that the nominative of this verb, *faire*, does not perform the ac-

tion expressed by the following infinitive, but causes that action to be performed. It thus corresponds to the English verbs *to cause, to make, to get.*

| | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Je le fis punir, | <i>I caused him to be punished.</i> |
| Cela me fera rire, | <i>That will make me laugh.</i> |
| J'ai fait peindre ma maison, | <i>I got my house painted.</i> |

It can be yet prefixed to *faire*.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Jo ferai faire une table, | <i>I shall have a table made.</i> |
| Il faut la faire faire bien grande, | <i>You must have it made very large.</i> |
| Avoir à faire à, | <i>To have to deal with.</i> |
| N'avoir que faire de, | <i>To have no need of.</i> |
| Ne faire que (infinitive) | <i>To do nothing but.</i> |
| Ne faire que de (infinitive), | <i>To have but just.</i> |
| Se faire, | <i>To get accustomed, to become, to turn.</i> |

Se faire, prefixed to an infinitive, expresses that the action performed has for its objective the person who gets the action performed.

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| Je me ferai accompagner, | <i>I will have some one to accompany me.</i> |
|--------------------------|--|

Prefixed to a noun it has various significations.

| | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| Se faire la barbe, | <i>To shave one's self.</i> |
| Se faire les ongles, | <i>To pare one's nails.</i> |

Faire, used impersonally when speaking of weather, answers to the verb *to be*.

| | |
|----------------|-------------------------|
| Il fait chaud, | <i>It is warm.</i> |
| Il fera froid, | <i>It will be cold.</i> |

Il fait frais, beau, mauvais, croté, sombre, clair, noir, obscur, sec, glissant.

It is cool, fine, bad, dirty, dark, clear, gloomy, dull, dry, slippery weather.

| | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Il fait mauvais marcher, | <i>It is bad walking.</i> |
| Il fait bon ici, | <i>It is comfortable here.</i> |
| Il fait, du tonnerre, des éclairs | <i>It thunders, it lightens, it is foggy weather, the wind blows.</i> |
| du brouillard, du vent | <i>It is day light, it is night, the moon shines.</i> |
| Il fait jour, nuit, clair de lune, | <i>It draws towards day light, it draws towards night, it draws late.</i> |
| Il se fait jour, nuit, tard, | |

OF THE PAST PARTICIPLES LAISSÉ AND FAIT.

The French verb *laisser* means *to suffer, to permit, to let*. Some grammarians pretend that, as it is used as an auxiliary, its past participle is always invariable; but an opinion which seems to be adopted by the best grammarians, is, that this participle follows the same rules as the past participle *vu* and *entendu*, and agrees in the same circumstances with its objective.

Thus you will say of Pigeons that you let eat,

Je les ai laissés manger,

But if you suffered them to be eaten,

Je les ai laissé manger.

It is not the same with the past participle *fait*. This never agrees with the preceding substantive, when it forms but one sense with the following infinitive.

Ex. *Je les ai fait venir,*

I made them come.

It is impossible to understand in this sentence that you have made the persons. This participle *fait* cannot, without impropriety, be separated from the following verb, and for that reason, being considered as a part of this verb, remains invariable.

ON SOME OTHER FRENCH VERBS.

Many French verbs are followed by a substantive without an article, and then have in French a peculiar acceptance.

Those which correspond to the English will not be included in this list.

Prendre soin de,

To take care of, to have the charge of.

Prendre garde à,

To take care of, to mind.

Prendre terre,

To land.

Prendre un parti,

To come to a determination.

Prendre pied,

To take footing.

Rendre grace,

To thank

Rendre compte,

To account for.

OF THE VERBS ALLER AND VENIR.

The verb *aller* is used in French, as well as in English, to express an action which will take place immediately. Its use in French is more frequent than in English.

Ex. Je vais écrire,
Je vais sortir,
Je vais y aller,

I am going to write.
I am going out.
I will go there directly.

The verb *venir*, followed by the preposition *de*, is used to express an action which has just taken place, and can be used in that acceptation in every circumstance.

Je viens de dîner,
Il vient de sortir,
Nous venons de rentrer,

I have just dined.
He has just gone out.
We have just come in.

It must be observed that *aller* and *venir* can be used as above explained only in the present and imperfect of the indicative.

OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS WHEN USED ALONE.

The English make great use of their auxiliary verbs employed alone, and without being followed by the principal verb of the sentence, which is then understood. The French cannot do the same, either because the sense of their phrase must be more complete, or because their language does not possess some of those auxiliary verbs. If it be considered that many of these verbs are used in English to keep up conversation with a person who speaks, the pupil will find great difficulty in supplying the meaning of these auxiliaries in the French. Therefore, it has been thought proper to introduce here a list of the words used to replace in French these useful English expressions.

I have. Have you? Is she? She is not. Do you? Did I? Was he? She did not. I will, shall I? Is it? is it not? I would not! I won't, &c. &c.

If any of these verbs are used to express an affirmation or negation, they may be translated by *oui* and *non*. If expressing admiration, surprise by *vraiment? est-il possible! oh!* or any other expression suggested by the impression of the moment.

In an answer *I have, I do, I did*, meaning an action, may be expressed by *c'est moi*, and if these verbs be negative, by *ce n'est pas moi*; *you have, you did*, by *c'est vous*, and so on with the other persons.

Is it not? by *n'est-ce pas?* *I will*, sometimes by *Je le veux bien, Je veux bien.*

Pour, Pénouet, by *je le peux Je ne le peux pas. Shall I?* by *dois-je?* followed by the principal verb and its objective.

The other verbs should be translated in all tenses and persons in the same manner as above, and by analogy with these examples.

Sometimes the French sentence is formed as if the verb understood had been expressed in the English sentences, or after *to be*, *to have*, by simply adding the objective to the verb.

| | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Je crois cela, le croyez vous ? | <i>I believe that, do you ?</i> |
| Je ne le crois pas, | <i>I do not.</i> |
| Etes-vous malade ? je le suis | <i>Are you sick ? I am.</i> |
| A-t-elle mon livre ? Elle l'a. | <i>Has she my book ? She has.</i> |

When after the verb *to be*, an adverb of place may be understood in the English sentence, that adverb must be expressed in French.

| | |
|---|--|
| Est-elle à la campagne ? oui elle y est, | |
| <i>Is she in the country ? Yes, she is.</i> | |

OF SOME OTHER FRENCH VERBS.

REMARK. As in the following verbs examples will be more explanatory than the longest reasonings, it has been judged proper to suppress the explanations, when this can be done, and to leave the scholar to construct sentences of his composition, on the models which will be given.

| | |
|---------------|----------------------|
| Valoir mieux, | <i>To be better.</i> |
|---------------|----------------------|

| | |
|---|--|
| Il vaudrait mieux vous taire, | |
| <i>It would be better for you to be silent.</i> | |
| Il valait mieux pour vous qu'il perdît, | |
| <i>It was better for you that he should lose.</i> | |
| Il vaudra mieux que vous y alliez, | |
| <i>It will be better for you to go there.</i> | |

Crier, *to cry out, to hollow.*

This verb does not express *to weep*, rendered by *pleurer*.
It means *to scold*.

Gêner, *to clog*:

| | |
|---------------|--|
| Cela me gêne, | <i>That clogs me, that is in my way.</i> |
|---------------|--|

Aller, *to be, to become*.

| | |
|-----------------------|--|
| Il va très bien, | <i>He is very well.</i> |
| Cela va bien, | <i>That is well.</i> |
| Cet habit me va bien, | <i>That coat becomes me very well.</i> |

Il y va de votre vie,
Se laisser aller,
Allons,

Penser,

J'ai pensé me tuer,
Il a pensé mourir,

Venir à bout de,
Entrer,

*Your life is concerned in it.
To abandon one's self.
Come on, go on, stop.*

To have like.

*I had like to be killed.
He had like to have died.*

*To bring about; to accomplish.
To enter.*

That verb is in French followed by *dans*.

J'entrai dans la chambre, *I entered the room.*

Mettre à même de, *to enable to,*

Vous me mettez à même de payer mes dettes,
You will enable me to pay my debts.

Se mettre à, *to begin.*

Il se mit à pleurer,
Mettre à la porte,

Se mettre en peine de,

N'en pouvoir plus,

Se pouvoir,

S'en prendre à,

S'y prendre bien,

S'y prendre mal,

En vouloir à,

En imposer,

En venir à,

Faire tenir,

Tenez,

He began to cry.

To turn out.

To trouble one's self about.

To be exhausted.

To be possible.

To lay the blame upon.

To do (a thing) the right way.

To do (a thing) the wrong way.

To owe a spite to.

To impose, to lie.

To come to.

To send; to convey.

here, take.

PHRASES ON SOME GALLICISMS.

Je ne saurais qu'y faire,

Il me tarde d'aller à la campagne,

Je ne laisse pas d'écrire,

L'avez-vous fait? Tants'en faut,

Comment se fait il-que . . . ?

De quoi agit-il?

Ils'agit de,

Est-ce à M. N. que j'ai l'honneur de parler,

Elle chante à ravir,

I cannot help it.

I long to go to the country.

I will write for all that.

Have you done it? Far from it.

How is it that . . . ?

What is the matter?

The matter is.

Have I the honour to speak to

M. N. ?

She sings wonderfully well.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Nous commençâmes à jouer, | <i>We began playing.</i> |
| Je ne permets pas de parler, | <i>I do not allow talking.</i> |
| Je l'ai laissé tout seul, | <i>I left him alone.</i> |
| Tenez-vous comme il faut | <i>If I da it, I wish I could gain some-</i> |
| A le faire je voudrais y gagner | <i>thing by it.</i> |
| quelque chose, | |
| Il ne tient qu'à moi de vous | <i>It is in my power to beat you.</i> |
| battre, | |
| Que dites-vous de nouveau? | <i>What news do you tell?</i> |
| Que dit-il de beau? | <i>What does he say which is inter-</i> |
| | <i>esting?</i> |
| Je vous donnerai quelque chose | <i>I will give you something good.</i> |
| de bon, | |
| Il y a là je ne sais quoi d'obscur, | <i>There is somewhat of obscurity.</i> |
| Il n'y a pas jusqu'aux enfans, | <i>Even children will meddle with it.</i> |
| qui ne s'en mêlent, | |
| Il s'en faut bien qu'il soit savant, | <i>He is far from being a learned</i> |
| | <i>man.</i> |
| Il n'est rien moins que généreux | <i>He is far from being generous.</i> |
| Nous voilà à nous lamenter, | <i>Here we are lamenting.</i> |
| Où en veut-il venir? | <i>What does he aim at?</i> |
| Tout malade qu'il est, | <i>Sick as he is.</i> |
| Avec tant soit peu d'argent, | <i>With ever so little money.</i> |

OBSERVATIONS ON SOME FRENCH VERBS.

| | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| Marier épouser, | <i>To marry.</i> |
| Do not say : <i>Mr. N. va marier Mr. L.</i> but <i>Mr. N. va épouser.</i> | |
| Se marier à or avec, | <i>To marry, to get married.</i> |
| Se rappeler, se souvenir de, | <i>To remember.</i> |

Se rappeler wants a direct objective. The objective of *se souvenir* is governed by the preposition *de*.

Thus say : *Je me le rappelle*, and *je m'en souviens*, *I remember it.*

| | |
|---------|------------------|
| Penser, | <i>To think.</i> |
|---------|------------------|

Penser, as was said before, requires the preposition *à*, to precede its objective, but when that objective is an interrogative pronoun, this verb may be followed by the preposition *de* in the sense of *about*.

Je pense à vous ; j'y pense.
Que pensez-vous de cela ? qu'en pensez-vous ?

| | |
|-----------|----------------------|
| Écouter, | <i>To listen to.</i> |
| Entendre, | <i>To hear.</i> |

N. B. When the English verb *to hear*, is followed by *of*, it must be translated in French by *entendre parler de*.

J'ai entendu parler de la mort du Roi.

When *to hear* is used in the sense of *to hear any*, it is translated by *entendre dire*; as, J'ai entendu dire que vous allez partir.

We also say,

Je n'ai jamais entendu dire cela,

I never heard of that.

In both cases, *entendre de* would be very improper.

These two verbs ought not to be confounded.

Marcher, se promener, *To walk.*

Marcher is the action that a man performs in going from one place to another; *Se promener*, is *to walk for your own pleasure*, to take a walk for the mere sake of walking, for enjoying the pleasure of a promenade. Thus it would seem ridiculous to a man who walks for his business, to say, *je me suis promené fort vite*, and also, *Les Dames marchent dans Broadway*.

Réussir, succéder, *To succeed.*

Réussir is *to be successful*, *succéder* is *to succeed to another person*, to come after.

Vivre, demeurer, *To live.*

Vivre means to exist, *demeurer* to reside.

Retourner, rendre.

Retourner means to come back, and *rendre* to give back, to restore.

Rendez-moi mon livre, *Return me my book.*

Présenter, introduire, *To introduce.*

Présenter is generally used for persons, *introduire* for things.

OF SOME ENGLISH VERBS.

To get.

This verb has many significations in French. Its past participle, *got*, is entirely suppressed in French after the verb *to have*. *Je l'ai, I have got it.*

When followed by a preposition or an adverb, as, *to get in*, *to get out*, this verb is generally expressed by a single word in French, which answers both for the verb and the preposition, and which can be found in Dictionaries.

To go and get is expressed by aller chercher.

Tenir prêt, *To get ready.*

To get home, *Arriver chez soi.*

To happen, *Arriver.*

This verb is always an impersonal in French, and may take an indirect objective.

Il lui arriva de rire, *He happened to laugh.*

Il arriva que mon oncle mourut, *It happened that my uncle died.*

Sometimes to happen is rendered by *venir à*.

S'ils viennent à se quereller,

If they happen to quarrel.

The expression *I had rather*, &c. is translated by *j'aimerais mieux*, &c. according to persons.

To become, *devenir*, followed by *of*, must be rendered in French as in the following examples :

Qu'est devenu votre frère ?

What is become of your brother ?

Je ne sais pas ce qu'il est devenu,

I do not know what is become of him.

GENERAL REMARKS ON FRENCH CONSTRUCTION.

In many instances we use the interrogative order in a sentence, although there be no question asked, but merely for the sake of elegance. The English have also such constructions in their language, and in nearly the same kind of phrases.

A peine eut-il fini qu'il sortit,

Hardly had he finished when he went out.

Peut être penserez-vous encore à moi,

Perhaps you will think of me again.

Encore a-t-il été obligé de payer,

And yet he has been obliged to pay.

Some English verbs used interrogatively are not in the interrogative in French, and particularly the following. The conjunction *si*, is used in the French sentence when it can be understood in English.

Had it not been for my cane,

Si ce n'eût été pour ma canne.

or simply, *Sans ma canne.*

There are in the French language some instances of the subjunctive, in which the verb precedes its nominative pronoun, viz. the following expressions :

Puisse-je vous revoir,
May I see you again.
 Dussé-je y perdre la vie,
Though I were to lose my life there.

and also, Plût à Dieu qu'il vint !
Would to God that he would come !
 A Dieu ne plaise, God forbid.

We use the expression, *Je ne sache pas*, for *I do not know*, when we intend to convey an idea of doubt, putting the verb in the subjunctive, although it is not preceded by another verb.

REMARK, A verb in French cannot be used in the passive, if it be not also used in the active ; that is to say, if it has no objective direct, and yet when an active, the passive verb must be constructed in such a manner, that the objective direct of the active be the nominative of the passive verb. If these conditions be not exactly fulfilled, the English sentence, constructed with *to be*, must be reversed in French ; in such a case, the nominative of the French verb is the indefinite pronoun *on*.

On n'a pas encore parlé de cela,
That has not been spoken of yet.

On lui défendit l'usage du feu et de l'eau,
He was forbidden the use of fire and water.

REMARK. It has been said, page 173, art. 5th, that a substantive which is at the same time the agent of the action expressed by an infinitive, and the objective of a preceding verb, must be placed after the infinitive ; now it must be remarked that if that verb in the infinitive have an objective, this objective must come directly after the verb, and the nominative, after the objective, but connected with the rest of the sentence by the preposition *à*.

Ex. J'ai entendu dire cela à votre père,

I heard your father say that,
as, I heard that said by your father.

Should the objective of that infinitive be a personal pronoun, placed before the first verb, the preposition *à* must still be prefixed to the nominative.

Je l'ai fait faire à votre sœur,

I made your sister do it.

It might happen that the objective of that infinitive should be another verb and a whole member of a phrase. In such a case this verb must be used last, but the preposition *à* is still prefixed to the nominative.

César fit promettre à Augustin de venir le voir au château.

César made Augustin promise to come and see him at the castle.

REMARK. Sometimes, when a preposition, governed in English by a verb, is suppressed in French, the word that was the objective of that preposition becomes the objective indirect of the verb, and is then preceded by the preposition *à*, or if it be a pronoun, is used as an objective indirect.

On a volé cent francs à mon père.

They have stolen a hundred francs from my father.

Cachez lui cela,

Hide that from him.

OBSERVATIONS ON PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Although the infinitive and present participle of pronominal verbs seem to be always preceded by the pronoun *se*, yet the pronouns *me*, *te*, *nous*, *vous*, are used as objectives to the infinitive when the nominative and present participle of the preceding verb as a pronoun of one of these persons.

Je vais me promener,

I am going to take a walk.

Songez à vous taire,

Mind to keep your silence.

Je fis cela en m'amusant,

I did that as a pastime.

OBSERVATIONS ON THE ARTICLES.

The learner may remember that we use the partitive article before a noun in the singular number, when that noun is used in a general sense and is not preceded by an article, even when that noun expresses some moral quality. It will be very important to remark here that if an adjective be added to that substantive, the indefinite article *un* or *une* must be used instead of the partitive. Thus we will say,

Ce peintre a du génie.

That painter has genius.

And,

Ce peintre a un grand talent,

That painter has great talent.

REMARK. It will also be remarked, that although it was said, page 126, that the article *le*, *la*, *les*, cannot be spared

before a superlative relative, yet the article is suppressed when the superlative is preceded by the possessive adjective *mon, ma, mes, &c.*

*Je mettrai mon plus bel habit,
I will put on my finest coat.*

REMARK. When the verb *être*, followed by a verb or a noun, comes after *ce qui, ce que, ce dont*, followed by a verb, the verb *être* must be preceded by the pronoun *ce*.

*Ce que j'aime c'est d'être seul, What I like is to be alone.
Ce qu'il y a de plus curieux c'est, That which is most curious.
un tableau de raphael, is a picture from Raphael.*

But should *être* be followed by an adjective, the *ce* must be suppressed.

Ce dont vous parlez est horrible, What you speak of is horrible.

REMARK. The conjunction *que* produces a great number of gallicisms.

In order to give more expression to a sentence constructed with the verb *to be*, we may use this verb as an impersonal, giving it the pronoun *ce* for its nominative, and placing after it the true nominative, connected with the verb by the conjunction *que*.

*C'est une funeste passion que le jeu,
Gaming is a terrible passion.*

Qu'est ce que c'est que cela ? What is that ?

The same conjunction *que* supplies many English words, besides those which have been mentioned, as will be seen in the following sentences.

Je ne doute pas qu'il vienne, I do not doubt but he will come.

Qu'il écrive ou non c'est la même chose, Whether he writes or not, it is the same thing.

Que ne veniez vous ? Why did you not come ?

Le jour qu'il mourut, The day when he died.

Il arriva que je sortais, He arrived as I was going out.

On le prendrait sur le fait, qu'il ne rougirait pas, Though he were taken on the fact, yet he would not blush.

REMARK. The indefinite pronoun *personne*, nobody, and *rien*, nothing, and the adverb *jamais*, never may, in interrogative and dubitative sentences, be used for *some or any body, some or any thing and ever*.

Personne oserait il nier ? Would any body dare deny ?

Y a-t-il rien de plus drole? *Is there any thing more singular?*

Si Jamais je vous attrappe, *If I ever catch you.*

Tout and *rien* are the only pronouns which are placed between the auxiliary and the verb in compound tenses.

Je n'ai pas tout dit, *I have not said all.*

Il n'a rien fait, *He has done nothing.*

REMARK. An adjective or a past participle cannot come immediately after the words *quand si*, and the demonstrative pronouns, *celui, celle, ceux, celles*, unless they are joined with these words by the verb *to be*.

Je suis bien quand je suis seul, *I am well when alone.*

Je le ferais si c'est possible *I will do it if possible.*

Ceux qui ont été déjà donnés, *Those already given.*

PHRASES CONSTRUCTED WITH PREPOSITIONS.

Que ferai-je DE cette plume? *What shall I do with this pen?*

Vous vous habillez à la Fran- *You dress after the French*
çaise, *fashion.*

Les méchans seront punis DE* *God will punish the wicked.*

Dieu,

Mourir POUR mourir je reste *If I have to die, I choose to stay*
ici, *here*

Pour fort qu'il soit il ne portera *However strong he may be, he*
pas ce fardeau, *will not carry that burden.*

Il est toujours PAR les rues, *He is always about streets.*

Je ne sais rien DE Cela. *I know nothing about that.*

Il a agi EN homme. *He acted as a man*

Il va à Boston EN trois jours, *He is three days going to Boston.*

Il va à Boston DANS trois jours, *Three days hence he is to go to*
Boston.

REMARKS ON DIFFERENT PARTS OF SPEECH.

Do not use indiscriminately *matin, jour, soir, &c.* and *matinée, journée, soirée, année*. These latter express the whole duration of the *morning, day, evening, and year*, while the former are used when we speak of any part of the *morning, day, &c.* Thus we say,

* The preposition *par* must not be placed before the word *Dieu*.

Je passerai la journée, la soi- *I will spend the day, the evening*
 rée avec vous, *with you.*

And,

Il vient le soir, *He comes in the evening.*

The preposition *in*, which is suppressed in the above sentence, is expressed by *de* in the following.

Quatre heures du matin, *Four o'clock in the morning.*

In reckoning, we generally use *jour*, *an*, &c.

Trois jours, vingt ans.

We use the word *monde* for *persons*, *people*, when we understand a certain number of persons, a crowd

Il y avait beaucoup de monde, *There were many persons.*

Place, lieu, endroit, *Place.*

Place means *seat*, the *place* of a thing, *room*, *square*.

Allez à votre place.

J'ai laissé de la place.

C'est une bonne place.

Ce livre n'est pas à sa place.

Il demeure dans la place Royale.

The English word *place*, used to mean a city, may be rendered by *pays*, or by *endroit* when it means a small town.

Lieu, *endroit* are used to express a place, somewhere, in some part of a room, a house, a city, or the world, or any where. *Lieu* is more poetical than *endroit*.

Cherchez dans quelqu'autre endroit.

Nous étions dans un lieu désert.

Je l'ai mis dans un endroit.

Il était dans un endroit éloigné.

Pièce, *morceau*, *piece*, (a part of a whole.)

Pièce is a piece to stop a hole; or when followed by the noun which expresses its nature, conveys the idea of a larger quantity than *morceau*.

Un morceau de viande, is a piece of meat that a person can eat; *une pièce de viande*, would be a very large piece of meat.

Parent and relation.

The French word *parent* means not only the *father* and *mother*, but all the persons of a family; *relation* means *intercourse*.

Voisin, prochain,

neighbor.

Voisin is a person who lives close^a by us ; it has its feminine *voisine*. *Prochain* is our neighbor, our brother, as used in the gospel.

Négociant, Marchand.

The French word *marchand* does not correspond to the English word *merchant*, but signifies *seller* ; as, *un marchand de musique*, a music seller ; *merchant* is expressed in French by *négociant*.

The words *man*, *woman*, *boy*, *girl*, employed in the sense of seller, are generally translated in French by *marchand*, *marchande*.

Thus, *le marchand d'huîtres*, *la marchande de pommes*, are more commonly used for the oysterman and the apple woman, than *l'homme aux huîtres* et *la femme aux pommes*.

aîné, aînée ;

cadet, cadette,

The former means the *eldest* brother or sister in a family, the latter means the *youngest*.

Quand, lorsque, when.

Quand and *lorsque* are synonymous, but *lorsque* cannot be used in asking a question.

Car, pour, For.

Car is a conjunction, and is used when *for* can be supplied by *because*.

Pour is a preposition, and must be followed by its objective.

Alors, donc, Then.

* *Donc* is only used to draw a conclusion, and generally when it can be supplied by *therefore*. It is generally placed after the verb.

Il est donc ruiné, He is then ruined.

OBSERVATIONS ON THE CONJUNCTION *si*.

The conjunction *si* governs the verb in the present or imperfect, when representing the English word *if*, as was said in the rules on the tenses. But if *si* represents *whether*, the verb must be put in French in the same tense as it is in English.

Je ne sais s'il viendra ou non,

I do not know whether he will come or not.

Difference between *peu de* and *un peu de*, a little, a few. *Peu de* is a little or a few, but not supposed enough.

Un peu de means a little or a few, but supposed enough.

Peu de corresponds to not much, not many; *un peu de* corresponds to some.

Il a peu d'argent. Buvez peu de vin.
Il a un peu d'argent. Buvez un peu de vin.

D'autant plus.....que, d'autant moins...que.

This expression can be rendered thus :

Je l'aime d'autant plus qu'il est très-sobre,
I love him the more, or so much the more, because he is a very sober man.

Je le crois d'autant moins que vous ne l'avez pas vu,
I believe it the less because you have not seen it.

Quand même, generally expressed in English by *although*, *even though*, is an elegant or emphatic expression.

Quand-même vous l'affirmeriez encore plus, je ne vous croirais pas,

Should you affirm it again and again I would not believe you.

REMARKS ON SOME ENGLISH PARTS OF SPEECH.

I will now endeavor to explain, in the latter part of this work, the manner in which many English words may be translated in French, which often prove so difficult to the learner.

OF THE ENGLISH CONJUNCTION *but*.

When the conjunction *but* conveys an idea of restriction, it is expressed in French by placing *ne* before the verb, and the conjunction *que* after; *pas* is omitted.

Je n'ai que Cent dollars, *I have but a hundred dollars.*

When that *que* is followed by a substantive in a partitive sense, the partitive article is sometimes suppressed.

Je n'y vois que fourberie.

ON THE ADJECTIVE *any*.

We cannot exactly render in French the adjective *any*, when it conveys an idea of choice or indetermination; several phrases however correspond to this word.

Come at any time, *Venez quand il vous plaira*
I will read any book, *Je lirai quelque livre que ce soit.*

| | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Speak to any person, | <i>Parlez à la première personne venue.</i> |
| You can see me at any hour, | <i>Vous pouvez me voir à l'heure que vous voudrez.</i> |
| Any thing, | <i>Quoi que ce soit.</i> |
| Any where, | <i>Quelque part que ce soit.</i> |
| Take any, | <i>Prenez celui que vous voudrez.</i> |

The adjective *pretty*, used to modify a following adjective or adverb, is translated by the adverb *assez*.

| | |
|--------------------|----------------------------|
| He is pretty tall, | <i>Il est assez grand.</i> |
| Pretty well, | <i>Assez bien.</i> |

How, before an adjective or an adverb, cannot be literally translated into French, but must be expressed in the following manner :

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------|
| How rich is he ? | <i>Quelle est sa fortune ?</i> |
| How big was it ? | <i>De quelle grosseur était il ?</i> |
| How old are you ? | <i>Quel âge avez-vous ?</i> |
| How often ? | <i>Combien de fois ?</i> |
| How far ? | <i>A quelle distance ?</i> |
| How few ? | <i>Combien ?</i> |

Right and *wrong*, which have no proper correspondent in French, must be translated by analogy with the following sentences.

| | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| You did right or wrong, | <i>Vous avez fait bien ou mal.</i> |
| That is the right way, | <i>C'est comme cela or ça.*</i> |
| That is the wrong way, | <i>Ce n'est pas comme cela or ça.</i> |
| You applied to the right person, | <i>Vous vous êtes adressé à qui il fallait.</i> |
| You applied to the wrong person, | <i>Vous ne vous êtes pas adressé à qui il fallait.</i> |
| The right side, | <i>L'endroit.</i> |
| The wrong side, | <i>L'envers.</i> |

Both, when a conjunction, is used as follows :

| | |
|-----------------------|--|
| Both young and rich, | <i>Tant jeune que riche, or merely jeune et riche.</i> |
| Both by sea and land, | <i>Par mer et par terre or tant par mer que par terre.</i> |

* *ça* is the contraction of *cela*, and used in proverbial or familiar sentences.

The adverb *y* is omitted for euphony, before the future and conditional of the verb *aller*.

J'irai ; nous irions,

I will go there ; we would go there.

Much distinction should be made between the passive verbs and the compound tenses of the *reflective*, *reciprocal*, and *pronominal* verbs always constructed with a double pronoun, and formed with the auxiliary *to be*.

The latter express an action which took place, and the former the state resulting from that action.

Thus, *Je me suis enrhumé*, means, *I took cold ;*

And *Je suis enrhumé*, means, *I have a cold.*

The same observation must be made with the following phrases, and the like.

Elle s'est mariée,

and *Elle est mariée,*

Il s'est noyé,

and *Il est noyé.*

Although the learner be able to translate in French the English possessive case, yet an example may be given here, of several possessive cases coming in succession, in which case the last word is put first in the French sentence.

My uncle's servant's dress,

La robe de la servante de mon oncle.

ON SOME ENGLISH SENTENCES.

That is immaterial to me,

Cela m' est indifférent ; c'est égal ; c'est la même chose.

No matter, never mind,

C'est égal, n'y faites pas attention.

I do not care,

Cela m' est égal.

Shall I procure a pen ?

Dois-je aller chercher une plume ?

I cannot afford to buy that,

Je ne peux pas acheter cela.

I cannot afford that at that price,

Je ne peux pas vendre cela à ce prix.

Can you spare a moment,

Pouvez-vous disposer d'un moment ?

I can spare that pen,

Je peux vous donner cette plume.

Je n'ai pas besoin de cette plume.

Move down, we are too crowded here,

Poussez-vous, nous sommes trop pressés ici.

I do not want,

Je ne veux pas.

What do you mean ?

Que voulez-vous dire ?

| | |
|--|--|
| I did not mean to put that, | <i>Je n'avais pas l'intention de mettre cela.</i> |
| She is practising, (on any instrument.) | <i>Elle étudie sa leçon de musique.</i> |
| I am not acquainted with him, | <i>Je ne le connais pas.</i> |
| I lent him my grammar; he never returned it to me, | <i>Je lui ai prêté ma grammaire; il ne me l'a pas encore rendue.</i> |
| I never have seen him since, | <i>Je ne l'ai plus vu depuis.</i> |
| I never was introduced to him, | <i>Je ne lui ai jamais été présenté.</i> |
| I cannot ascertain that, | <i>Je ne pourrais assurer cela.</i> |
| Can you ascertain how far he has gone? | <i>Pouvez-vous savoir où jusques il a été?</i> |
| I continued motionless, | <i>J'étais toujours sans mouvement.</i> |
| They conquered an immense country, | <i>Ils conquièrent un pays immense.</i> |
| We conquered the Turks, | <i>Nous vainquîmes les Turcs.</i> |
| The battle was fought, | <i>La bataille fut donnée.</i> |
| I withdrew, | <i>Je me retirai.</i> |
| Who told you of it? | <i>Qui vous l'a dit?</i> |
| I will call on you, | <i>Je passerai chez vous.</i> |
| Give us a call, | <i>Venez nous voir.</i> |
| What does it avail me to know? | <i>A quoi me sert de savoir?</i> |
| What avails learning without virtue? | <i>A quoi sert la science sans la vertu?</i> |
| We take a ride every day, (on horseback) | <i>Nous nous promenons à cheval tous les jours.</i> |
| They have gone a riding (in a carriage, a gig) | <i>Ils sont allés se promener en voiture, en cabriolet.</i> |
| We rode several miles, | <i>Nous fîmes plusieurs milles. (en voiture or à cheval.)</i> |
| He is gone a walking, | <i>Il est allé se promener.</i> |
| Let us go a sailing, | <i>Allons nous promener en bateau.</i> |
| Had you a pleasant walk? | <i>Avez-vous fait une promenade agréable?</i> |
| Take those ladies home, | <i>Conduisez ces dames chez elles.</i> |
| I took a journey, | <i>Je fis un voyage.</i> |
| I dropped my ring, | <i>J'ai laissé tomber ma bague.</i> |
| You must be silent, | <i>Il ne faut rien dire.</i> |
| Do not move, | <i>Ne bougez pas.</i> |
| You always shake the table, | <i>Vous faites toujours remuer la table.</i> |

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Do it as long as you please, | <i>Faites-le aussi long-tems qu'il vous plaira.</i> |
| I will try to do that better, | <i>J'essaierai de le faire mieux.</i> |
| Try to come by six o'clock, | <i>Tâchez de venir à six heures.</i> |
| Can you supply us with coal, | <i>Pouvez-vous nous fournir du charbon ?</i> |
| I understand that you have been sick, | <i>J'ai appris que vous étiez malade.</i> |
| I heard of your marriage, | <i>J'ai appris votre mariage.</i> |
| He cannot make himself understood, | <i>Il ne peut pas se faire comprendre.</i> |
| I will thank you for the slate, | <i>Je vous serai obligé si vous me donnez l'ardoise.</i> |
| You never mind what you are about, | <i>Vous ne faites jamais attention à ce que vous faites.</i> |
| Do you attend the French church ? | <i>Allez-vous à l'église Française ?</i> |
| I will attend to it immediately, | <i>Je vais m'en occuper tout de suite.</i> |
| Why do you stop reading ? go on ! | <i>Pourquoi cessez-vous de lire ? continuez.</i> |
| You hurt me ; stop ! | <i>Vous me faites mal ; finissez.</i> |
| She does not improve in her writing, | <i>Elle ne fait pas de progrès dans son écriture.</i> |
| That is improved, | <i>Cela va mieux.</i> |
| I might as well go there, | <i>Il vaudrait tout autant que j'y allasse.</i> |
| I give up, | <i>J'y renonce.</i> |
| You must not give up to them, | <i>Il ne faut pas leur céder.</i> |
| Did I pass you ? | <i>Ai-je passé sans vous reconnaître.</i> |
| I applied to that man, | <i>Je me suis adressé à cet homme.</i> |
| I think I mentioned it to you, | <i>Je crois que je vous en ai parlé.</i> |
| Did you find him in ? | <i>L'avez-vous trouvé chez lui ?</i> |
| You will be kept in, | <i>Vous serez retenu.</i> |
| I cannot see, | <i>Je n'y vois pas.</i> |
| What is the matter ? | <i>De quoi s'agit-il ? qu'y a-t-il.</i> |
| What is the matter with you ? | <i>Qu'avez-vous ?</i> |
| What is the matter with your eye ? | <i>Qu'avez-vous à l'œil ?</i> |
| I can't help it, | <i>Je ne peux pas faire autrement.</i> |

| | |
|---|--|
| What did he sell it for? | <i>Pour combien l'a-t-il vendu ?</i> |
| I asked him questions, | <i>Je lui fis des questions.</i> |
| Let them come in, | <i>Faites les entrer.</i> |
| He lives next door, | <i>Il demeure à la maison d' d-côté.</i> |
| The book which lies under the table, | <i>Le livre qui est sous la table.</i> |
| I wa - lying down, | <i>J'étais couché.</i> |
| She was sitting, | <i>Elle était assise.</i> |
| Try to have it ready against my coming, | <i>Tâchez que ce soit prêt pour quand je viendrai.</i> |
| Will you make or mend a pen for me? | <i>Voulez vous me tailler une plume.</i> |
| That makes me happy, | <i>Cela me rend heureux.</i> |
| I do not feel well, | <i>Je ne me sens pas bien.</i> |
| How long is it since you saw him last? | <i>Combien y a-t-il que vous ne l'avez vu ?</i> |

OTHER ENGLISH EXPRESSIONS, ON ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS AND CONJUNCTIONS.

| | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Last night, | <i>Hier-soir.</i> |
| The day before yesterday, | <i>Avant hier.</i> |
| The night before last, | <i>Avant-hier au soir.</i> |
| To night, | <i>(e soir.</i> |
| The day after to-morrow, | <i>Après-demain.</i> |
| The day before, | <i>La veille.</i> |
| The next day, | <i>Le lenaemain.</i> |
| Monday week, | <i>De lundi en huit.</i> |
| A short time since, | <i>Depuis peu.</i> |
| A long time, | <i>Long-tems.</i> |
| Half an hour longer, | <i>Une demi-heure de plus.</i> |
| Any longer, | <i>Pas d'avantage.</i> |
| Once more, | <i>Encore une fois.</i> |
| All the time, | <i>Continuellement.</i> |
| Early in the morning, | <i>Le matin de bonne heure.</i> |
| Earlier, | <i>De meilleure heure</i> |
| By ten o'clock, | <i>A dix heures.</i> |
| Whenever, | <i>Toutes les fois que.</i> |
| Up stairs, down stairs, | <i>En-haut, en-bas.</i> |
| Out doors, | <i>Dehors.</i> |
| On the park, | <i>A park.</i> |
| On the battery, | <i>A la batterie.</i> |
| In the country, | <i>A la campagne.</i> |
| This way, | <i>De ce côté-ci.</i> |

That way,
The upper part,
The lower part,
Very much, very many,

Too much, too many,

Not much, not many,
Not all,
Not very well, not ill,
No more, not any more,
Not I, not he,
The last but one,

De ce côté-là.

Le haut.

Le bas.

Beaucoup (*très* is not expressed.)

Trop, (*beaucoup* is not expressed,

Pas beaucoup.

Pas tout.

Pas très bien, pas mal.

Pas d'avantage.

Pas moi, pas lui.

L'avant-dernier.





